HERMES
OR
A PHILOSOPHICAL INQUIRY
CONCERNING
UNIVERSAL GRAMMAR
BY IAMES HARRIS ESQ.

THE THIRD EDITION
REVISED AND CORRECTED

LONDON
PRINTED FOR JOHN NOVRSE
AND PAVL VAILLAN
M DCC LXXI
To the Right Honourable

PHILIP Lord HARDWICKE, Lord High Chancellor of Great Britain*.

My Lord,

As no one has exercised the Powers of Speech with juster and more universal applause, than yourself; I have presumed to inscribe the following Treatise to your Lordship, its End being to investigate the Principles of those Powers. It has a farther claim to your Lordship's Patronage, by being connected in some degree with that politer Literature, which, in the most important Scenes of

* The above Dedication is printed as it originally stood, the Author being desirous that what he intended as real Respect to the noble Lord, when living, should now be considered, as a Testimony of Gratitude to his Memory.
Dedication.

of Business, you have still found time to cultivate. With regard to myself, if what I have written be the fruits of that Security and Leisure, obtained by living under a mild and free Government; to whom for this am I more indebted, than to your Lordship, whether I consider you as a Legislator, or as a Magistrate, the first both in dignity and reputation? Permit me therefore thus publicly to assure your Lordship, that with the greatest gratitude and respect I am, My Lord,

Your Lordship's most obliged,  
and most obedient humble Servant,

Cleft of Salisbury,  
Feb. 3, 1751.

James Harris.
THE chief End, proposed by the Author of this Treatise in making it public, has been to excite his Readers to curiosity and inquiry; not to teach them himself by prolix and formal Lectures, (from the efficacy of which he has little expectation) but to induce them, if possible, to become Teachers to themselves, by an impartial use of their own understandings. He thinks nothing more absurd than the common notion of Instruction, as if Science were to be poured into the Mind, like water into a cistern, that passively waits to receive all that comes. The growth of Knowledge he rather thinks to resemble the growth of Fruit; however external causes may in some degree co-operate, it is the internal vigour, and virtue of the
the tree, that must ripen the juices to
their just maturity.

This then, namely, the exciting
men to inquire for themselves into
subjects worthy of their contemplation,
this the Author declares to have been
his first and principal motive for
appearing in print. Next to that,
as he has always been a lover of
Letters, he would willingly approve
his studies to the liberal and inge-
nuous. He has particularly named
these, in distingution to others; because,
as his studies were never prosecuted
with the least regard to lucre, so they
are no way calculated for any lucra-
tive End. The liberal therefore and
ingenious (whom he has mentioned
already) are those, to whose perusal
he offers what he has written. Should
they judge favourably of his attempt,
he may not perhaps hesitate to confess,

Hoc juvat et melli est.—
Forbo' he hopes, he cannot be charged with the foolish love of vain Praise; he has no desire to be thought indifferent, or insensible to honest Fame.

From the influence of these sentiments, he has endeavoured to treat his subject with as much order, correctness, and perspicuity as in his power; and if he has failed, he can safely say (according to the vulgar phrase) that the failure has been his misfortune, and not his fault. He scorns those trite and contemptible methods of anticipating pardon for a bad performance, that "it was the hasty "fruits of a few idle hours; written "merely for private amusement; "never revised; published against "consent, at the importunity of "friends, copies (God knows how) "having by stealth gotten abroad;" with other stale jargon of equal falsehood and inanity. May we not ask such Prefacers, If what they allege
be true, what has the world to do with them and their crudities?

As to the Book itself, it can say this in its behalf, that it does not merely confine itself to what its title promises, but expatiates freely into whatever is collateral; aiming on every occasion to rise in its inquiries, and to pass, as far as possible, from small matters to the greatest. Nor is it formed merely upon sentiments that are now in fashion, or supported only by such authorities as are modern. Many Authors are quoted, that now a-days are but little studied; and some perhaps, whose very names are hardly known.

The Fate indeed of antient Authors (as we have happened to mention them) is not unworthy of our notice. A few of them survive in the Libraries of the learned, where some venerable Folio, that still goes by their name,
just suffices to give them a kind of
nominal existence. The rest have
long fallen into a deeper obscurity,
their very names, when mentioned,
affecting us as little, as the names,
when we read them, of those subordi-
nate Heroes,

Alcandrumque, Haliumque, No-
emonaque, Prytanimque.

Now if an Author, not content
with the more eminent of antient
Writers, should venture to bring his
reader into such company as these
last, among people (in the fashion-
able phrase) that no body knows;
what usage, what quarter can he
have reason to expect?—Should the
Author of these speculations have
done this (and it is to be feared he
has) what method had he best take in
a circumstance so critical?—Let us
suppose him to apologize in the best
manner he can, and in consequence
of this, to suggest as follows—

He
He hopes there will be found a pleasure in the contemplation of ancient sentiments, as the view of ancient Architecture, tho' in ruins, has something venerable. Add to this, what from its antiquity is but little known, has from that very circumstance the recommendation of novelty; so that here, as in other instances, Extremes may be said to meet. Farther still, as the Authors, whom he has quoted, lived in various ages, and in distant countries; some in the full maturity of Grecian and Roman Literature; some in its declension; and others in periods still more barbarous, and depraved; it may afford perhaps no unpleasing speculation, to see how the same Reason has at all times prevailed; how there is one Truth, like one Sun, that has enlightened human Intelligence through every age, and saved it from the darkness both of Sophistry and Error.

Nothing
Nothing can more tend to enlarge the Mind, than these extensive views of Men, and human Knowledge; nothing can more effectually take us off from the foolish admiration of what is immediately before our eyes, and help us to a juster estimate both of present Men, and present Literature.

It is perhaps too much the case with the multitude in every nation, that as they know little beyond themselves, and their own affairs, so out of this narrow sphere of knowledge, they think nothing worth knowing. As we Britons by our situation live divided from the whole world, this perhaps will be found to be more remarkably our case: And hence the reason, that our studies are usually satisfied in the works of our own Countrymen; that in Philosophy, in Poetry, in every kind of subject, whether serious or ludicrous, whether sacred or profane, we think per-
perfection with ourselves, and that it is superfluous to search farther.

The Author of this Treatise would by no means detract from the just honours due to those of his Country-men, who either in the present, or preceding age, have so illustriously adorned it. But tho' he can with pleasure and sincerity join in celebrating their deserts, he would not have the admiration of these, or of any other few, to pass thro' blind excess into a contempt of all others. Were such Admiration to become universal, an odd event would follow; a few learned Men, without any fault of their own, would contribute in a manner to the extinction of Letters.

A like evil to that of admiring only the authors of our own age, is that of admiring only the authors of one particular Science. There is indeed in this last prejudice something
peculiarly unfortunate, and that is, the more excellent the Science, the more likely it will be found to produce this effect.

There are few Sciences more intrinsically valuable, than Mathematics. It is hard indeed to say, to which they have more contributed, whether to the Utilities of Life, or to the sublimest parts of Science. They are the noblest Praxis of Logic, or universal Reasoning. It is thro' them we may perceive, how the stated Forms of Syllogism are exemplified in one Subject, namely the Predicament of Quantity. By marking the force of these Forms, as they are applied here, we may be enabled to apply them of ourselves elsewhere. Nay farther still—by viewing the Mind, during its process in these syllogistic employments, we may come to know in part, what kind of Being it is; since Mind, like other Powers, can be
be only known from its Operations. Whoever therefore will study Mathematics in this view, will become not only by Mathematics a more expert Logician, and by Logic a more rational Mathematician, but a wiser Philosopher, and an acuter Reasoner, in all the possible subjects either of science or deliberation.

But when Mathematics, instead of being applied to this excellent purpose, are used not to exemplify Logic, but to supply its place; no wonder if Logic pass into contempt, and if Mathematics, instead of furthering science, become in fact an obstacle. For when men, knowing nothing of that Reasoning which is universal, come to attach themselves for years to a single Species, a species wholly involved in Lines and Numbers only; they grow insensibly to believe these last as inseparable from all Reasoning, as the poor Indians thought
every horseman to be inseparable from his horse.

And thus we see the use, nay the necessity of enlarging our literary views, lest even Knowledge itself should obstruct its own growth, and perform in some measure the part of ignorance and barbarity.

Such then is the Apology made by the Author of this Treatise, for the multiplicity of antient quotations, with which he has filled his Book. If he can excite in his readers a proper spirit of curiosity; if he can help in the least degree to enlarge the bounds of Science; to revive the decaying taste of antient Literature; to lessen the bigotted contempt of every thing not modern; and to assert to Authors of every age their just portion of esteem; if he can in the least degree contribute to these ends, he hopes it may be allowed, that he has done a service
service to mankind. Should this service be a reason for his Work to survive, he has confessed already, it would be no unpleasing event. Should the contrary happen, he must acquiesce in its fate, and let it peaceably pass to those destined regions, whither the productions of modern Wit are every day passing,

—in vicum vendentem tus et odores.
THE CONTENTS.

BOOK I.

Chapter I. Introduction. Design of the whole. page 1
Chap. II. Concerning the Analyzing of Speech into its smallest Parts. p. 9
Chap. III. Concerning the several Species of those smallest Parts. p. 23
Chap. IV. Concerning Substantives, properly so called. p. 37
Chap. V. Concerning Substantives of the Secondary Order. p. 63
Chap. VI. Concerning Attributives, and first concerning Verbs. p. 87
Chap. VII. Concerning Time, and Tenses. p. 100
Chap. VIII. Concerning Modes. p. 140
Chap. IX. Concerning Verbs, as to their Species and other remaining Properties. p. 173
CONTENTS.

Chap. X. Concerning Participles and Adjectives. p. 184
Chap. XI. Concerning Attributives of the Secondary Order. p. 192

BOOK II.

Chapter I. Concerning Definitives. page 213
Chap. II. Concerning Connectives, and first those called Conjunctions. p. 237
Chap. III. Concerning those other Connectives, called Prepositions. p. 261
Chap. IV. Concerning Cases. p. 275
Chap. V. Concerning Interjections—Recapitulation—Conclusion. p. 289

BOOK III.

Chapter I. Introduction—Division of the Subject into its principal Parts. page 305
Chap. II. Upon the Matter or common Subject of Language. p. 316
Chap.
CONTENTS.

Chap. III. Upon the Form, or peculiar Character of Language. p. 327

Chap. IV. Concerning general or universal Ideas. p. 350

Chap. V. Subordination of Intelligence—Difference of Ideas, both in particular Men, and in whole Nations—Different Genius of different Languages—Character of the English, the Oriental, the Latin, and the Greek Languages—Superlative Excellence of the Last—Conclusion. p. 403
HERMES

OR A PHILOSOPHICAL INQUIRY CONCERNING UNIVERSAL GRAMMAR.

BOOK I.

CHAP. I.

INTRODUCTION.

Design of the Whole.

If Men by nature had been framed for Solitude, they had never felt an Impulse to converse one with another: And if, like lower Animals, they had been by nature irrational, they could not have recognized the proper Subjects of Discourse. Since Speech then is the joint Energie of our best and noblest Faculties (a), (that is to say, of our Reason.

(a) See V. I. p. 147 to 169. See also Note xv. p. 292, and Note xix. p. 296. of the fame Volume.
son and our social Affection) being withal our peculiar Ornament and Distinction, as Men; those Inquiries may surely be deemed interesting as well as liberal, which either search how Speech may be naturally resolved; or how, when resolved, it may be again combined.

Here a large field for speculating opens before us. We may either behold Speech, as divided into its constituent Parts, as a Statue may be divided into its several Limbs; or else, as resolved into its Matter and Form, as the same Statue may be resolved into its Marble and Figure.

These different Analyzing or Resolutions constitute what we call (b) Philosophical, or Universal Grammar.

When

(b) Grammaticam etiam bipartitam ponamus, ut alia sit literaria, alia philosophica &c. Bacon. de Augm. Scient. VI. 1. And soon after he adds—Verumtamen hac ipsa re moniti, cogitatione complexi sumus Grammaticam quandam, quæ non analogiam verborum ad invicem, sed analogiam inter verba et res sive rationem sedulo inquirat.
When we have viewed Speech thus Ch. I. analysed, we may then consider it, as compounded. And here in the first place we may contemplate that (c) Synthesis, which by combining simple Terms produces a Truth; then by combining two Truths produces a third; and thus others, and others, in continued Demonstration, till we are led, as by a road, into the regions of Science.

Now this is that superior and most excellent Synthesis, which alone applies itself to our Intellect or Reason, and which to

B 2 conduct

(c) Aristotle says — τῶν δὲ καλὰ μυθεμίαν συμπλοκὴν λεγομένων ἔδω ἐτε ἀληθείς ἔτε ὑπεύθυς ἐν ὧν ἀνθρωπός, λέως, τρέξει, νικᾷ — Of those words which are spoken without Connection, there is no one either true or false; as for instance, Man, white, runneth, conquereth. Cat. C. 4. So again in the beginning of his Treatise De Interpretatione, πεσ γὰρ σύνθεσιν ἃ διάφορα ἐστι τὸ ὑπεύθυς τι το ἀληθείς. True and False are seen in Composition and Division. Composition makes affirmative Truth, Division makes negative, yet both alike bring Terms together, and so far therefore may be called synthetical.
HERMES.

Ch. I. conduct according to Rule, constitutes the Art of Logic.

After this we may turn to those (d) inferior Compositions, which are productive

(d) Ammonius in his Comment on the Treatise Περὶ Ερμηνείας, p. 53, gives the following Extract from Theophrastus, which is here inferred at length, as well for the Excellence of the Matter, as because it is not (I believe) elsewhere extant.

Διτὴς γὰρ ἄσκης τὰ λόγα σχέσεως, (καθ’ ἀ διώρισεν ὁ Φιλόσοφος Θεόφραστος) τις τα ΠΡΟΣ ΤΟΥΣ ΑΚΡΟΩΜΕΝΟΤΣ, οἡς κὰ σημαίνει τι, κὰ της ΠΡΟΣ ΤΑ ΠΡΑΓΜΑΤΑ, ὑπὲρ ὡς ὁ λόγων πείθαι προσθίναι τα ἀκρωμέναν, ὥσπερ μὲν ἐν τῷ σχέσιν ἀλλὰ τὴν ΠΡΟΣ ΤΟΥΣ ΑΚΡΟΑΤΑΣ καλαγίνονται ὑπολογικὴ καὶ προλογικὴ, διότι ἔγχων αὐλαῖς ἐκλεῖσθαι τα σεμιντέρα τῶν ὑμοίων, ἀλλὰ μὴ τὰ κοινὰ καὶ συνθεμενοῦσα, κὰ ταῦτα ἐναρμονίως συμπλέκειν ἀλλόλοις, ὥσπερ διὰ τότως καὶ τῶν τῶν ἐπομένων, ὅτιν σαφεινειὰς, γλυκύτητική, κὰ τῶν ἄλλων ἴδεων, τα τε μακρολογίας, κὰ βαρχυλογίας, καὶ καὶ οἰκείων πάντων ὄρασεων καὶ συμπληρωμένων, οἰσάν τε τὸν ἀκροατιν, καὶ ἐκπλήξαι. καὶ πρὸς τὸν πείθω κείρωθείσα ἔχειν τῆς δὲ τὰ ΠΡΟΣ ΤΑ ΠΡΑΓΜΑΤΑ τὰ λόγα σχέσεως ὁ Φιλόσοφος προηγομένως ἐπιμεληθέσθαι, τὸ, τοῦ τε θεώς διελέγχων.
Book the First.

...duetive of the Pathetic, and the Plea-Ch. I.
sant in all their kinds. These latter Com-
positions

...The Relation of Speech being twofold (as the Philosopher Theophrastus hath settled it) one to the Hbearers, to whom it explains something, and one to the Things, concerning which the Speaker proposes to persuade his Hbearers: With respect to the first Relation, that which regards the Hbearers, are employed Poetry and Rhetoric. Thus it becomes the business of these two, to select the most respectable Words, and not those that are common and of vulgar use, and to connect such Words harmoniously one with another, so as thro' these things and their consequences, such as Perspicuity, Delicacy, and the other Forms of Eloquence, together with Copiousness and Brevity, all employed in their proper season, to lead the Hearer, and strike him, and hold him vanquished by the power of Persuasion. On the contrary, as to the Relation of Speech to Things, here the Philosopher will be found to have a principal employ, as well in refuting the False, as in demonstrating the True.

Sanetius speaks elegantly on the same Subject.

Creadit Deus hominem rationis participem; cui, quia Sociabilem esse voluit, magno pro munere dedit Ser-
monem. Sermoni autem persiciendo tres opifices adhi-
buit. Prima est Grammatica, quae ab oratione solae-
cifmos & barbarifnos expellit; secunda Dialectica,
quae in Sermonis veritate versatur; tertia Rhetorica,
quae ornatum Sermonis tantum exquirit. Min. I. I.
c. 2.
positions aspire not to the Intellect, but being addressed to the Imagination, the Affections, and the Sense, become from their different heightnings either Rhetoric or Poetry.

Nor need we necessarily view these Arts distinctly and apart; we may observe, if we please, how perfectly they co-incide. Grammar is equally requisite to every one of the rest. And though Logic may indeed subsist without Rhetoric or Poetry, yet so necessary to these last is a sound and correct Logic, that without it, they are no better than warbling Trifles.

Now all these Inquiries (as we have said already) and such others arising from them as are of still sublimer Contemplation, (of which in the Sequel there may be possibly not a few) may with justice be deem'd Inquiries both interesting and liberal.
At present we shall postpone the whole Ch. I. synthetical Part, (that is to say, Logic and Rhetoric) and confine ourselves to the analytical, that is to say Universal Grammar. In this we shall follow the Order, that we have above laid down, first dividing Speech, as a Whole into its constituent Parts; then resolving it, as a Composite, into its Matter and Form; two Methods of Analysis very different in their kind, and which lead to a variety of very different Speculations.

Should any one object, that in the course of our Inquiry we sometimes descend to things, which appear trivial and low; let him look upon the effects, to which those things contribute, then from the Dignity of the Consequences, let him honour the Principles.

The following Story may not improperly be here inserted. "When the Fame
of Heraclitus was celebrated throughout Greece, there were certain persons, that had a curiosity to see so great a Man. They came, and, as it happened, found him warming himself in a Kitchen. The meanness of the place occasioned them to stop; upon which the Philosopher thus accosted them—Enter (says he) boldly, for here too there are Gods.

We shall only add, that as there is no part of Nature too mean for the Divine Presence; so there is no kind of Subject, having its foundation in Nature, that is below the Dignity of a philosophical Inquiry.

(e) See Aristot. de Part. Animal. 1. 1. c. 5.
BOOK THE FIRST.

CHAP. II.

Concerning the Analysing of Speech into its smallest Parts.

THOSE things, which are first to Nature, are not first to Man. Nature begins from Causes, and thence descends to Effects. Human Perceptions first open upon Effects, and thence by slow degrees ascend to Causes. Often had Mankind seen the Sun in Eclipse, before they knew its Cause to be the Moon’s Interposition; much oftener had they seen those unceasing Revolutions of Summer and Winter, of Day and Night, before they knew the Cause to be the Earth’s double Motion (a).

Even

(a) This Distinction of first to Man, and first to Nature, was greatly regarded in the Peripatetic Philosophy. See Arist. Phys. Auct. l. i. c. i. Themistius’s Comment on the same, Pofler. Analys. l. i. c. 2. De Anima, l. 2. c. 2. It leads us, when properly regarded, to a very important Distinction between
tween Intelligence Divine and Intelligence Human. God may be said to view the First, as first; and the Last, as last; that is, he views Effects thro' Causes in their natural Order. Man views the Last, as first; and the First, as last; that is, he views Causes thro' Effects, in an inverse Order. And hence the Meaning of that Passage in Aristotle: ὡσεὶς γὰρ τὰ τῶν νυκτερίδων ὦμοια ἐν αὐτῷ τῷ ἤθικῶ ἐχει τὸ μεθ’ ἡμῖν, ἐτώ ὡς τής ἡμετέρας θυλακίσ τὸ ὅρασ πρὸς τὰ τῆς φύσει φαινόμενα πάλιν. As are the Eyes of Bats to the Light of the Day, so is Man's Intelligence to those Objects, that are by Nature the brightest and most conspicuous of all Things, Metaph. 1. 2. c. 1. See also 1. 7. c. 4. and Ethic. Nicom. 1. 1. c. 4. Ammonius, reasoning in the same way, says very pertinently to the Subject of this Treatise—'Ἀγαπητόν τῇ ἀνθρωπίνῃ φύσει, εἰκ τῶν ἀντεικαρνᾷ κυριοτέρων ἐπὶ τὰ ἀνθρωπότερα καὶ τελείότερα προϊόντα, τὰ γὰρ σύνθετα μᾶλλον συνάψιν ἡμῖν, καὶ γνωριμώτερα. "Ουτω γῦν καὶ ὁ παῖς εἰργαὶ μὲν λόγους, καὶ εἰσεῖν, Σωκράτης περιπατεῖ, οἴδημα τὸν ἀναλύσει καὶ ὁνομα ὡς ῥήμα, καὶ ταύτα εἰς συλλαβάς, κακεῖνα εἰς σοφεῖνα, εἴτε. Human Nature may be well contented to advance from the more imperfect and complex to the more simple and perfect; for the complex Subjects are more familiar to us, and better known. Thus therefore it is that even a Child knows how to put a Sentence together, and say, Socrates walketh;
tical Observers, the rest look no higher than to the \emph{Practice} and mere \emph{Work}, knowing nothing of those \emph{Principles}, on which the whole depends.

Thus in Speech for example—All men, even the lowest, can speak their Mother-Tongue. Yet how many of this multitude can neither write, nor even read? How many of those, who are thus far literate, know nothing of that Grammar, which respects the Genius of their own Language? How few then must be those, who know \textit{Grammar universal}; that Grammar, which without regarding the several Idioms of particular Languages, only respects those \textit{Principles}, that are essential to them all?

’Tis our present Design to inquire about this Grammar; in doing which we shall follow

walketh; but how to resolve this Sentence into a Noun and Verb, and these again into Syllables, and Syllables into Letters or Elements, here he is at a loss. Am. in Com. de Prædic. p. 29.
Ch. II. follow the Order consonant to human Perception, as being for that reason the more easy to be understood.

We shall begin therefore first from a Period or Sentence, that combination in Speech, which is obvious to all, and thence pass, if possible, to those its primary Parts, which, however essential, are only obvious to a few.

With respect therefore to the different Species of Sentences, who is there so ignorant, as if we address him in his Mother-Tongue, not to know when 'tis we assert, and when we question; when 'tis we command, and when we pray or wish?

For example, when we read in Shakespeare*,

The Man, that hath no music in himself,
And is not mov'd with concord of sweet sounds,
Is fit for Treasons—

Or

* Merchant of Venice.
Or in Milton*,

O Friends, I hear the tread of nimble feet,
Hafting this way—
'tis obvious that these are assertive sentences, one founded upon Judgment, the other upon Sensation.

When the Witch in Macbeth says to her Companions,

When shall we three meet again
In thunder, lightning, and in rain?
this 'tis evident is an interrogative sentence.

When Macbeth says to the Ghost of Banquo,

——Hence, horrible Shadow,
Unreal Mock'ry hence!——
he speaks an imperative sentence, founded upon the passion of hatred.

* P. L. IV. 866.
When Milton says in the character of his Allegro,

_Haste thee, Nymph, and bring with thee jest and youthful Jollity,_

he too speaks an imperative Sentence, tho' founded on the passion, not of hatred but of love.

When in the beginning of the Paradisè Lost we read the following address,

_And chiefly thou, O Spirit, that dost prefer_ 
_Before all temples th' upright heart, and pure,_ 
_Instruct me, for thou know'st—_

this is not to be called an imperative Sentence, tho' perhaps it bear the same Form, but rather (if I may use the Word) *tis a Sentence precative or optative.*

What then shall we say? Are Sentences to be quoted in this manner without ceasing, all differing from each other in their
their stamp and character? Are they no Ch. II.
way reducible to certain definite Classes? —
If not, they can be no objects of rational
comprehension.—Let us however try.

'Tis a phrase often apply'd to a man,
when speaking, that he speaks his mind;
as much as to say, that his Speech or Dis-
course is a publishing of some Energie or
Motion of his Soul. So it indeed is in every
one that speaks, excepting alone the Dis-
femblar or Hypocrite; and he too, as far
as possible, affects the appearance.

Now the Powers of the soul (over
and above the meer† nutritive) may be in-
cluded all of them in those of Percep-
tion, and those of Volition. By the
Powers of Perception, I mean the
Senses and the Intellect; by the Powers of
Volition, I mean, in an extended sense,
not only the Will, but the several Passions
and Appetites; in short, all that moves to
Action, whether rational or irrational.

† Vid. Aristot. de An. II. 4.
Ch. II. If then the leading Powers of the Soul be these two, 'tis plain that every Speech or Sentence, as far as it exhibits the Soul, must of course respect one or other of these.

If we assert, then is it a Sentence which respects the Powers of Perception. For what indeed is to assert, if we consider the examples above alleged, but to publish some Perception either of the Senses or the Intellect?

Again, if we interrogate, if we command, if we pray, or if we wish, (which in terms of Art is to speak Sentences interrogative, imperative, precative, or optative) what do we but publish so many different Volitions?—For who is it that questions? He that has a Desire to be informed.—Who is it that commands? He that has a Will, which he would have obey'd.—What are those Beings, who either wish or pray? Those, who feel certain
certain wants either for themselves, or Ch. II. others.

If then the Soul's leading Powers be the two above mentioned, and it be true that all Speech is a publication of these Powers, it will follow that every Sentence will be either a sentence of Assertion, or a Sentence of Volition. And thus, by referring all of them to one of these two classes, have we found an expedient to reduce their infinitude (b).

The

(b) Ρὴλίον δὲ ὁτι τὴς ψυχῆς τῆς ἡμετέρας διὶ ἐξώς ἀνάμειν, τάς μὲν γνωσικὰς, τάς δὲ ζωικὰς, τάς ἄρ ὀρθέλικας λειτομέας (λόγω δὲ γνωσικὰς μὲν, καθ' ὡς γινόσκομεν ἐκασω τῶν ὄντων, οἶον τῶν, διανοια, δόξαι, μαντασίαι κ' ἄισθησιν· ὀρθέλικας δὲ, καθ' ὡς ἐφερομένα τῶν αἰτεθῶν, ἢ τῶν ὄντων, ἢ τῶν δοκεόμενων, οἶον διάλεγον λόγῳ, προαίρεσιν, ὑμιδὴν, κ' ἐπιθυμίαν) τὰ ΜΕΝ τέτελε, εἰδὴ τῆς λόγου (τὰ ὑπὲρ τοῦ ἀποφαντικοῦ) ἅπτο τῶν ὀρθελικῶν δυνάμεων προερχομένη ταῖς τῆς ψυχῆς, ἐκ αὐτῆς καθ' αὐτῇ ἐνεργήσας, ἀλλ' ἢ ὑπὸ ἔτερον ἀποτείμομενς (τὸν συμβάλλεσθαι δοκειντα ὑπὸ τοῦ τυχεῖν τῆς ὀφέλειας) κ' ἔτοι λόγου παρ' αὐτῇ.
The Extensions of Speech are quite indefinite, as may be seen if we compare the

Meaning of the above passage being implied in the Text, we take its translaton from the Latin Interpreter. 

Dicendum igitur est, cum anima nostra duplicem potestate habeat, cognitionis, & vité, quæ etiam appellationis ac cupiditatis appellatur, quæ vero cognitionis est, vis est, quod res singulas cognoscimus, ut mens, cogitatio, opinio, phantasia, sensus: appetitus vero facultas est, quod bona, vel quæ sunt, vel quæ videntur, concupiscimus, ut sunt voluntas, consilium, ira, cupiditas: quatuor orationis species, praeter enunciantem, a partibus animi proficisciunt, quæ concupiscunt; non cum animus ipse per se agit, sed cum ad alium se convertit, qui eī ad consequendum id, quod cupidit, conducere posse videatur; atque etiam vel rationem ab eo exquirit, ut in oratione, quam Percunctan-
Book the First.

the Eneid to an Epigram of Martial. But Ch. II. the longest Extension, with which Grammar has to do, is the Extension here considered, that is to say a Sentence. The greater Extensions (such as Syllogisms, Paragraphs, Sections, and complete Works) belong not to Grammar, but to Arts of higher order; not to mention that all of them are but Sentences repeated.

Now a Sentence (c) may be sketched in the following description—a compound

c2

Quantity

tem, aut Interrogantem vocant; vel rem: sique rem, vel cum ipsum conjecqui cupit, quicquum loquitur, ut in optante oratione, vel aliquam ejus actionem: atque in hâc, vel ut a praflantiore, ut in Deprecatione; vel ut ab inferiori, ut in eo, qui proprius Jussus nominatur. Scl autem Enuncians a cognoscendi facultate proficiscitur: hâcque nunciat rerum cognitionem, quae in nobis est, aut veram, aut simulatam. Itaque Hâc sola verum falsoque capi: præterea vero nulla. Ammon. in Libr. de Interpretatione.

(c) Λόγος de Phvni sustetn σημαντικη, τις εινα μείν καθ' αυτα σημαίνει τι. Arif. Poet. c. 20. See also de Interpret. c. 4.
Thus when I say [the Sun shineth] not only the whole quantity of sound has a meaning, but certain Parts also, such as [Sun] and [shineth.]

But what shall we say? Have these Parts again other Parts, which are in like manner significant, and so may the progress be pursued to infinite? Can we suppose all Meaning, like Body, to be divisible, and to include within itself other Meanings without end? If this be absurd, then must we necessarily admit, that there is such a thing as a Sound significant, of which no Part is of itself significant. And this is what we call the proper character of a (d) Word. For thus, though the Words

\[(d) Θωυν ἰσμαντικών, - ἦς μέγεθε ἐδὲν εἰς καθ' αὐτὸ σμαντικών. \] De Poetic. c. 20. De Interpret. c. 2. & 3. Priscian's Definition of a Word (Lib 2.) is as follows
Words [Sun] and [shineth] have each a Ch. II. Meaning, yet is there certainly no Meaning in any of their Parts, neither in the Syllables of the one, nor in the Letters of the other.

If therefore all Speech whether in prose or verse, every Whole, every Section, every Paragraph, every Sentence, imply a certain Meaning, divisible into other Meanings, but Words imply a Meaning, which is not so divisible: it follows that Words will be the smallest parts of Speech, in as much as nothing less has any Meaning at all.

C 3

Ch. II. To know therefore the species of Words must needs contribute to the knowledge of Speech, as it implies a knowledge of its minutest Parts.

This therefore must become our next Inquiry.
Concerning the species of Words, the smallest Parts of Speech.

Let us first search for the species of Ch. III. Words among those Parts of Speech, commonly received by Grammarians. For example, in one of the passages above cited.—

The Man, that hath no music in himself,
And is not mov'd with concord of sweet sounds,
Is fit for treasons—

Here the Word [The] is an Article;—
[Man] [No] [Music] [Concord] [Sweet] [Sounds] [Fit] [Treasons] are all Nouns, some Substantive, and some Adjective—
[That] and [Himself] are Pronouns—
[Hath] and [is] are Verbs—[moved] a Participle—[Not] an Adverb—[And] a Conjunction—[In] [with] and [For]
Ch. III. are Prepositions. In one sentence we have all those Parts of Speech, which the Greek Grammarians are found to acknowledge. The Latins only differ in having no Article, and in separating the Interjection, as a Part of itself, which the Greeks include among the Species of Adverbs.

What then shall we determine? why are there not more Species of Words? why so many? or if neither more nor fewer, why these and not others?

To resolve, if possible, these several Queries, let us examine any Sentence that comes in our way, and see what differences we can discover in its Parts. For example, the same Sentence above,

*The Man that hath no music, &c.*

One Difference soon occurs, that some Words are *variable*, and others *invariable*. Thus the Word *Man* may be varied into *Man’s* and *Men*; *Hath*, into *Have*, *Hast*, *Had*,
Had, &c. Sweet into Sweeter and Sweetest; Ch. III. 
Fit into Fitter and Fittest. On the contrary the Words, The, In, And, and some others, remain as they are, and cannot be altered.

And yet it may be questioned, how far this Difference is essential. For in the first place, there are Variations, which can be hardly called necessary, because only some Languages have them, and others have them not. Thus the Greeks have the dual Variation, which is unknown both to the Moderns and to the ancient Latins. Thus the Greeks and Latins vary their Adjectives by the triple Variation of Gender, Case, and Number; whereas the English never vary them in any of those ways, but thro’ all kinds of Concord preserve them still the same. Nay even those very Variations, which appear most necessary, may have their places supplied by other methods; some by Auxiliars, as when for Bruti, or Bruto we say, of Brutus, to Brutus; some by
Ch. III. by meeq Position, as when for Brutum amat
vit Cassius, we say, Cassius lov'd Brutus.
For here the Accusative, which in Latin
is known any where from its Variation, is
in English only known from its Position or
place.

If then the Distinction of Variable and
Invariable will not answer our purpose, let
us look farther for some other more ef-
fential.

Suppose then we should dissolve the
Sentence above cited, and view its several
Parts as they stand separate and detached.
Some 'tis plain still preserve a Meaning,
(such as Man, Music, Sweet, &c.) others
on the contrary immediately lose it (such as,
And, The, With, &c.) Not that these last
have no meaning at all, but in fact they
never have it, but when in company, or
associated.

Now it should seem that this Distinc-
tion, if any, was essential. For if all
Words
Words are significant, or else they would not be Words; and if every thing not absolute, is of course relative, then will all Words be significant either absolutely or relatively.

With respect therefore to this Distinction, the first sort of Words may be call'd significant by themselves; the latter may be call'd significant by relation; or if we like it better, the first sort may be call'd Principals, the latter Accessories. The first are like those stones in the basis of an Arch, which are able to support themselves, even when the Arch is destroyed; the latter are like those stones in its Summit or Curve, which can no longer stand, than while the whole subsists (e.)

§ This

(e) Appollonius of Alexandria (one of the acutest Authors that ever wrote on the subject of Grammar) illustrates the different power of Words, by the different power of Letters. "Ετι, ὅν τρόπον τῶν συνέχειων τὰ μὲν ἐστὶ φωνῆες, ὡς καὶ εαυτὰ φωνῆν ἀποτελεῖ; τὰ
Ch. III. § This Distinction being admitted, we thus pursue our Speculations. All things what-

ta de συμφωνα, απερ αυτω των φωνητων εκ εχει ρητιν των εικωψιων. τον αυτον τροπον εστιν επινουσαι κα πι των λεξεων. οι μεν γαρ αιτων, τροπον τινα των φωνητων, ρηται εισιν καθαπερ ειπι των ρηματων, ωνοματων, αν-θυμων, επιρρηματων—αι δει, ασπερα συμφωνα, εαυταινει τα φωνητα, ο ευνυμενα κατ' ιδιαν ρητα ειναι—καθαπερ επι των προβιστων, των δειρων, των σωδησμων τα γαρ ταιζυτα αει των μοριων συστηματει.

In the same manner, as of the Elements or Letters some are Vowels, which of themselves complete a Sound; others are Consonants, which without the help of Vowels have no express Vocality, so likewise may we conceive as to the nature of Words. Some of them, like Vowels, are of themselves expressive, as is the case of Verbs, Nouns, Pronouns, and Adverbs; others, like Consonants, wait for their Vowels, being unable to become expressive by their own proper strength, as is the case of Prepositions, Articles, and Conjunctions; for those parts of Speech are always Consignificant, that is, are only significant, when associated to something else. Apollon. de Syntaxi. L. i. c. 3. Itaque quibusdam philosophis placuit nomen & verbum Solas esse partes Orationis; cetera vero, Adminicula vel Juncturas earum: quomodo nrionem partes sunt tabulae & trabes, cetera autem (id est, ceru, flappa, & clavi & similia) vincula & conglutina- tiones
whatever either exist as the Energies, or Affections of some other thing, or without being the Energies or Affections of some other thing. If they exist as the Energies or Affections of something else, then are they called Attributes. Thus to think is the attribute of a Man; to be white, of a Swan; to fly, of an Eagle; to be four-footed, of a Horse. If they exist not after this manner, then are they call’d Substances*. Thus Man, Swan, Eagle and Horse are none of them Attributes, but all Substances, because however they may exist in Time and Place, yet neither of these, nor of any thing else do they exist as Energies or Affections.

Ch. III. And thus all things whatsoever being either (f) Substances or Attributes, it follows of course that all Words, which are significant as Principals, must needs be significant of either the one or the other. If they are significant of Substances, they are call'd Substantives; if of Attributes, they are call'd Attributives. So that all Words whatever, significant as Principals, are either Substantives or Attributives.

Again, as to Words, which are only significant as Accessories, they acquire a Signification either from being associated to one Word, or else to many. If to one Word alone, then as they can do no more than in some manner define or determine, they may justly for that reason be called De-

---

(f) This division of things into Substance an Accident seems to have been admitted by Philosophers of all Sects and Ages. See Categor. c. 2. Metaphys. L. VII. c. 1. De Coelo, L. III. c. 1.
Definitives. If to many Words at Ch. III.

once, then as they serve to no other pur-
pose than to connect, they are called for
that reason by the name of Connec-
tives.

And thus it is that all Words what-
ever are either Principals or Accessories;
or under other Names, either significant
from themselves, or significant by relation.
—If significant from themselves, they are
either Substantives or Attributives; if
significant by relation, they are either
Definitives or Connectives. So that un-
der one of these four Species, Sub-
stantives, Attributives, De-
finitives, and Connectives, are
all Words, however different, in a
manner included.

If any of these Names seem new and
unusual, we may introduce others more
usual, by calling the Substantives, Nouns;
the Attributives, Verbs; the Definitives,
Arti-
Shou'd it be ask'd, what then becomes of Pronouns, Adverbs, Prepositions, and Interjections; the answer is, either they must be found included within the Species above-mentioned, or else must be admitted for so many Species by themselves.

§ There were various opinions in ancient days, as to the number of these Parts, or Elements of Speech.

Plato in his * Sophist mentions only two, the Noun and the Verb. Aristotle mentions no more, where he treats of † Propositions. Not that those acute Philosophers were ignorant of the other Parts, but they spoke with reference to Logic or Dia-

† De Interpr. c. 2 & 3.
Dialectic (g), considering the Essence of Ch.III. Speech as contained in these two, because these alone combined make a perfect affirmative Sentence, which none of the rest without them are able to effect. Hence therefore Aristotle in his * treatise of Poetry (where he was to lay down the elements of

(g) Partes igitur orationis sunt secundum Dialecticos dux, Nomen & Verbum; quia hæ sola etiam per se conjunctæ plenam faciunt orationem; alias autem partes εὐκαλυφόματα, hoc est, consignificantia appellabant. Priscian. l. 2. p. 574. Edit. Putschii. Exigit hic quædam quæstio, cur duo tantum, Nomen & Verbum, se (Aristoteles sc.) determinare promittat, cum plures partes orationis esse videantur. Quibus hoc dicendum est, tantum Aristotelem hoc libro diffinisse, quantum illi ad id, quod instituerat tractare, sufficit. Tractat namque de simplici enuntiativa oratione, quæ seilicet hujusmodi est, ut junxit tantum Verbis & Nominibus componatur.—Quare superfluum est quaerere, cur alias quoque, quæ videntur orationis partes, non propofuerit, qui non totius simpliciter orationis, sed tantum simplicis orationis institutione elementa partiri. Boetius in Libr. de Interpretat. p. 295. Apollonius from the above principles elegantly calls the Noun and Verb, τὰ ἴμμυκχότατα μίη τὸ λόγῳ, the most animated parts of Speech. De Syntaxi l. i. c. 3. p. 24. See also Plutarch, Quest., Platon. p. 1009. * Poet. Cap. 20.
Ch. III. of a more variegated speech) adds the Article and Conjunction to the Noun and Verb, and so adopts the same Parts, with those established in this Treatise. To Aristotle's authority (if indeed better can be required) may be added that also of the elder Stoics (h).

The latter Stoics instead of four Parts made five, by dividing the Noun into the Appellative, and Proper. Others increased the number, by detaching the Pronoun from the Noun; the Participle and Adverb from the Verb; and the Preposition from the Conjunction. The Latin Grammarians went farther, and detached the Interjection from the Adverb, within which by the Greeks it was always included, as a Species.

(\(h\) For this we have the authority of Dionysius of Halicarnassius, De Struct. Orat. Sect. 2. whom Quintilian follows, Inst. i. i. c. 4. Diogenes Laertius and Priscian make them always to have admitted five Parts. See Priscian, as before, and Laertius, Lib. VII. Segm. 57.)
We are told indeed by (i) Dionysius of Halicarnassus and Quintilian, that Aristotle, with Theodectes, and the more early writers, held but three Parts of speech, the Noun, the Verb, and the Conjunction. This, it must be owned, accords with the oriental Tongues, whose Grammars (we are (k) told) admit no other. But as to Aristotle, we have his own authority to assert the contrary, who not only enumerates the four Species which we have adopted, but ascertains them each by a proper Definition *.

(i) See the places quoted in the note immediately preceding.

(k) Antiquissima eorum est opinio, qui tres classis faciente. Estque hae Arabum quoque sententia—Hebrae quoque (qui, cum Arabes Grammaticam scribere desinerent, artem eam demum scribere coeperunt, quod ante annos consigerit circiter quadringentos) Hebraei, inquam haec in re secuti sunt magistros suos Arabes.—Inno vero trium classium numerum aliae etiam Orientalis linguarum retinet. Dubium, utrum quia in re Orientalis imitati sunt antiquos Graecorum, aut potius secuti sunt Orientalium exemplum. Ut etiam veteres Graecos tres tantum partes agnosisse, non folum auter est Dionysius, &c. Voss. de Analog. 1. 1. c. 1. See also Sanctii Minerv. l. 1. c. 2.

* Sup. p. 34.
Ch. III. To conclude—the Subject of the following Chapters will be a distinct and separate consideration of the Noun, the Verb, the Article, and the Conjunction; which four, the better (as we apprehend) to express their respective natures, we chuse to call Substantives, Attributives, Definitives and Connectives.
Concerning Substantives, properly so called.

Substantives are all those principal Words, which are significant of Substances, considered as Substances.

The first sort of Substances are the natural, such as Animal, Vegetable, Man, Oak.

There are other Substances of our own making. Thus by giving a Figure not natural to natural Materials we create such Substances, as House, Ship, Watch, Telescope, &c.

Again, by a more refined operation of our Mind alone, we abstract any Attribute from its necessary subject, and consider it apart, devoid of its dependence. For example, from Body we abstract to Fly; from Surface,
Ch. IV. face, the being White: from Soul, the being Temperate.

And thus it is we convert even Attributes into Substances, denoting them on this occasion by proper Substantives, such as Flight, Whiteness, Temperance; or else by others more general, such as Motion, Colour, Virtue. These we call abstract Substances; the second sort we call artificial.

Now all those several Substances have their Genus, their Species, and their Individuals. For example in natural Substances, Animal is a Genus; Man, a Species; Alexander, an Individual. In artificial Substances, Edifice is a Genus; Palace, a Species; the Vatican, an Individual. In abstract Substances, Motion is a Genus; Flight, a Species; this Flight or that Flight are Individuals.
As therefore every (a) Genus may be found whole and intire in each one of its Species; (for thus Man, Horse, and Dog are each of them distinctly a complete and intire Animal) and as every Species may be found whole and intire in each one of its Individuals; (for thus Socrates, Plato, and Xenophon are each of them completely and distinctly a Man) hence it is, that every Genus, tho' One, is multiplied into Many; and every Species, tho' One, is also multiplied into Many, by reference to those beings, which are their proper subordinates. Since then no Individual has any such Subordinates, it can never in strictness be considered as Many, and so is truly an Individual as well in Nature as in Name.

D 4 From

(a) This is what Plato seems to have expressed in a manner somewhat mysterious, when he talks of μίαν ἑδήν διὰ τῶν ἄρον, ἐνὸς ἑκάστας καὶ τῶν χωρίς, πάντας διατεταμένων—ὑπὸ τῶν ἔχουσιν ἑλικίων, ἐπὶ μίας ἑλικίας τε εἰκοσάετης. Sophil. p. 253. Edit. Serrani. For the common definition of Genus and Species, see the Iagoge or Introduction of Porphyry to Aristotle's Logic.
Ch. IV. From these Principles it is, that Words following the nature and genius of Things, such Substantives admit of Number as denote Genera or Species, while those, which denote (b) Individuals, in strictness admit it not.

Besides

(b) Yet sometimes Individuals have plurality or Number, from the causes following. In the first place the Individuals of the human race are so large a multitude even in the smallest nation, that it would be difficult to invent a new Name for every new born Individual. Hence then instead of one only being call'd Marcus, and one only Antonius, it happens that many are called Marcus and many called Antonius; and thus 'tis the Romans had their Plurals, Marci and Antonii, as we in later days have our Marks and our Anthonies. Now the Plurals of this sort may be well called accidental, because it is meerly by chance that the Names coincide.

There seems more reason for such Plurals, as the Ptolemies, Scipios, Catos, or (to instance in modern names) the Howards, Pelhams, and Montagues; because a Race or Family is like a smaller sort of Species; so that the family Name extends to the Kindred, as the specific Name extends to the Individuals.

A third cause which contributed to make proper Names become Plural, was the high Character or Emi-
nence of some one Individual, whose Name became afterwards a kind of common Appellative, to denote all those,
Besides *Number*, another character- Ch.IV. 

istic, visible in Substances, is that of *Sex.*

Every Substance is either *Male* or *Female*; or *both Male and Female*; or *neither one nor the other*. So that with respect to *Sexes* and their *Negation*, all *Substances conceiv-able* are comprehended under *this fourfold consideration*.

Now the existence of *Hermaphrodites* being rare, if not doubtful; hence *Language*, only regarding those distinctions which

those, who had pretensions to merit in the same way. Thus every great *Critic* was call’d an *Aristarchus*; every great *Warrior*, an *Alexander*; every great *Beauty*, a *Hel- lin*, &c.

*A Daniel come to Judgment! yea a Daniel,*

cries *Shylock* in the Play, when he would express the wisdom of the young Lawyer.

So *Martial* in that well known verse,

*Sint Mæcénates, non deerunt, Flacco, Marones.*

So *Lucilius,*

*ΑΙΓΙΛΙΠΟΙ monter, ἘΤΗΝΑΕ omnes, asperi A- THONES.*

*τοσοὶ ΦΑΕΘΟΝΤΕΣ, ἢ ΔΕΥΚΑΛΙΩΝΕΣ*. Lucian

Ch. IV. which are more obvious, considers *Words denoting Substances* to be either *Masculine, Feminine, or Neuter*.

As to our own Species and all those animal Species, which *have reference to common Life*, or of which the Male and the Female, by their size, form, colour, &c. are *eminently distinguished*, most Languages have different Substantives, to denote the Male and the Female. But as to those animal Species, which either *less frequently occur*, or of which one Sex is *less apparently distinguished* from the other, in these a single Substantive commonly *serves* for both Sexes.

*After this manner they are distinguished by Aristotle. Ταῦν ὅνομάτων τὰ μὲν ἀρρένα, τὰ δὲ Σῆληα, τὰ δὲ μεταξύ. Poet. cap. 21. Protagoras before him had established the same Distinction, calling them ἀρρένα, Σῆληα, ἃς σχέν. Aristot. Rhet. L. III. c. 5. Where mark what were afterwards called ἀντερέα, or Neuters, were by these called τὰ μεταξύ ἃς σχέν.*
In the English Tongue it seems a general rule (except only when infringed by a figure of Speech) that no Substantive is Masculine, but what denotes a Male animal Substance; none Feminine, but what denotes a Female animal Substance; and that where the Substance has no Sex, the Substantive is always Neuter.

But 'tis not so in Greek, Latin, and many of the modern Tongues. These all of them have Words, some masculine, some feminine (and those too in great multitudes) which have reference to Substances, where Sex never had existence. To give one instance for many. Mind is surely neither male, nor female; yet is ΝΟΥΣ, in Greek, masculine, and MENS, in Latin, feminine.

† Nam quicquid per Naturam Sexui non adsignatur, neutrum haberi oportet, sed id Ars &c. Consent apud Putfch. p. 2023, 2024.

The whole Passage from Genera Hominum, quae naturalia sunt &c. is worth perusing.
Ch. IV. In some Words these distinctions seem owing to nothing else, than to the mere casual structure of the Word itself: It is of such a Gender, from having such a Termination; or from belonging perhaps to such a Declension. In others we may imagine a more subtle kind of reasoning, a reasoning which discerns even in things without Sex a distant analogy to that great Natural Distinction, which (according to Milton) animates the World‡.

In this view we may conceive such Substantives to have been considered, as Masculine, which were “conspicuous for the Attributes of imparting or communicating; or which were by nature active, strong, and efficacious, and that indiscriminately whether to good or to ill; or which had claim to Eminence, either laudable or otherwise.”

‡ Mr. Linnaeus, the celebrated Botanist, has traced the Distinction of Sexes throughout the whole Vegetable World, and made it the Basis of his Botanic Method.
The Feminine on the contrary were Ch. IV. "such, as were conspicuous for the At-
tributes either of receiving, of containing, or of producing and bringing forth;
or which had more of the passive in their nature, than of the active; or which were peculiarly beautiful and amiable; or which had respect to such Excesses, as were rather Feminine, than Masculine."

Upon these Principles the two greater Luminaries were considered, one as Masculine, the other as Feminine; the Sun ("Ηλιος, Sol) as Masculine, from communicating Light, which was native and original, as well as from the vigorous warmth and efficacy of his Rays; the Moon (Σελήνη, Luna) as Feminine, from being the Receptacle only of another’s Light, and from shining with rays more delicate and soft.

Thus
Thus Milton,

First in his East the glorious Lamp was seen,
Regent of Day, and all the Horizon round
Invested with bright rays; jocund to run
His longitude thro' Heav'n's high road:
the gray
Dawn, and the Pleiades before him danc'd,
Shedding sweet influence. Less bright the Moon
But opposite, in level'd West was set,
His mirror, with full face borrowing her Light
From him; for other light she needed none.

P. L. VII. 370.

By Virgil they were considered as Brother and Sister, which still preserves the same distinction.

Nec Fratris radiis obnoxia surgere Luna.
G. I. 396.

The Sky or Ether is in Greek and Latin Masculine, as being the source of those showers, which impregnate the Earth.
The Earth on the contrary is universally feminine, from being the grand Receiver, the grand Container, but above all from being the Mother (either mediately or immediately) of every sublunary substance, whether animal or vegetable.

Thus Virgil,

*Tum Pater omnipotens fecundis imbrisbus Æther
Conjugis in gremium Ætæ descendit,
& omnes
Magnus alit magno commixtus corpore fætus.*

G. II. 325.

Thus Shakespeare,

† Common Mother, Thou
Whose Womb unmeasurable, and infinite
Breast
Teems and feeds all—Tim. of Athens.

So Milton,

Whatever Earth, all-bearing Mother,
yields.

P. L. V.

* Senecæ Nat. Quæst. III. 14.
Ch. IV. So Virgil,

Non jam mater alit Tellus, viresque
ministrat (c). AEn. XI. 71.

Among artificial Substances the Ship
(Naūs, Navis) is feminine, as being so
eminently a Receiver and Container of va-
rious things, of Men, Arms, Provisions,
Goods, &c. Hence Sailors, speaking of
their Vessel, say always, “she rides at
“anchor,” “she is under sail.”

A City (Πόλις, Civitas) and a Coun-
try (Πατρίς, Patria) are feminine also,
by being (like the Ship) Containers and
 Receivers, and farther by being as it were
the Mothers and Nurses of their respective
Inhabitants.

Thus

(c) — διὸ κ' ἐν τῷ ὀλῷ τὴν ΓΗΣ φύσιν, ὡς ΘΗΛΤ
κ' ΜΗΤΕΡΑ νομίζωσιν ΟΤΡΑΝΟΝ ἐν κ' ΗΛΙΟΝ,
κ' ἐν τῷ ἄλλῳ τῶν τοίτων, ὡς ΓΕΝΩΝΤΑΣ κ' ἠ
l. 1. c. 2.
Thus Virgil,

Salve, magna Parens frugum, Saturnia Tellus,

Magna Virum— Geor. II. 173.

So, in that Heroic Epigram on those brave Greeks, who fell at Chaeronea,

Γαῖας δὲ Πάτρις ἔχει κόλποις τῶν ωλείζα κα-

μόντων

Σώματα—

Their parent Country in her bosom holds

Their wearied bodies.—*

So Milton,

The City, which Thou seest, no other deem

Than great and glorious Rome, Queen of

the Earth. Par. Reg. L. IV.

As to the Ocean, tho' from its being

the Receiver of all Rivers, as well as the

Container

* Demost. in Orat. de Coronâ.
Ch. IV. Container and Productress of so many Vegetables and Animals, it might justly have been made (like the Earth) Feminine; yet its deep Voice and boisterous Nature have, in spight of these reasons, prevailed to make it Male. Indeed the very sound of Homer's

μέγα θεόν Ὀμεανοῖο,

would suggest to a hearer, even ignorant of its meaning, that the Subject was incompatible with female delicacy and softness.

TIME (Χρόνῳ) from his mighty Efficacy upon everything around us, is by the Greeks and English justly considered as Masculine. Thus in that elegant distich, spoken by a decrepit old Man,

* 'Ο γὰρ Χρόνῳ μὲ ἐκαμψθε, τέκσιν ὡ σοφὸς,
'Αναλη δ' ἐργαζόμενοι. ἄθενέσσατα †.

Me TIME hath bent, that sorry Artift, HE
That surely makes, whate'er he handles, worse.

So

* Ω Χρόνῳ, παιδίοι μυθίζου παντίσχοιε Δαίμον.
So too Shakespeare, speaking likewise of Ch. IV.

Orl. Whom doth he gallop withal?
Ros. With a thief to the gallows.—
As you like it.

The Greek θάνατος or θάνατος and the English Death, seem from the same irresistible Power to have been considered as Masculine. Even the Vulgar with us are so accustomed to this notion, that a Female Death they would treat as ridiculous (d).

Take a few Examples of the masculine Death.

(d) Well therefore did Milton in his Paradise Lost not only adopt Death as a Person, but consider him as Masculine: in which he was so far from introducing a Phantom of his own, or from giving it a Gender not supported by Custom; that perhaps he had as much the Sanction of national Opinion for his Masculine Death, as the ancient Poets had for many of their Deities.
Ch. IV. Callimachus upon the Elegies of his Friend Heraclitus—

'Ai de tei ζώσιν ανήδονες, ήτιν δ' ἔσαντων
Ἀρτάκην Ἀίδης ἐν ἐπὶ χεὶρα βαλεὶ.

—yet thy sweet warbling strains
Still live immortal, nor on them shall Death
His hand e'er lay, tho' Ravager of all.

In the Alcestis of Euripides, Θάνατος
or Death is one of the Persons of the drama; the beginning of the play is made up of dialogue between Him and Apollo; and towards its end, there is a fight between Him and Hercules, in which Hercules is conqueror, and rescues Alcestis from his hands.

It is well known too, that Sleep and Death are made Brothers by Homer. It was to this old Gorgias elegantly alluded, when at the extremity of a long life he lay slumbering on his Death-bed. A Friend asked him, "How he did?"—

"Sleep
"Sleep (replied the old Man) is just upon Ch. IV.
"delivering me over to the care of his
"Brother (e)."

Thus Shakespeare, speaking of Life,
—merely Thou art Death's Fool;
For Him Thou labour'st by thy flight to
shun,
And yet run'st towards Him still.
Meaf. for Meaf.

So Milton,
Dire was the tossing, deep the groans,
Despair
Tended the sick, busiest from couch to couch:
And over them triumphant Death his
dart
Shook; but delay'd to strike—
P. L. XI. 489 (f).

(e) "Ἡδη με Ο ΤΠΝΟΣ άχεται παρακατατί-
(f) Suppose in any one of these examples we introduce a female Death; suppose we read,
E 3 And
Ch. IV. **The supreme Being (God, Θεός, Deus, Dio, &c.)** is in all languages Masculine, in as much as the masculine Sex is the superior and more excellent; and as He is the Creator of all, the Father of Gods and Men. Sometimes indeed we meet with such words as Τὸ Πρῶτον, Τὸ Θεῖον, Numen, Deity (which last we English join to a neuter, saying Deity itself) sometimes I say we meet with these Neuters. The reason in these instances seems to be, that as God is prior to all things, both in dignity and in time, this Priority is better characterized and express'd by a Negation, than by any of those Distinctions which are co-ordinate with some Opposite, as Male for

*And over them triumphant Death her dart
Slewk, &c.*

What a falling off? How are the nerves and strength of the whole Sentiment weakened?
for example is co-ordinate with Female, Ch.IV. Right with Left, &c. &c. (g).

Virtue ("Aretà, Virtus) as well as most of its Species are all Feminine, perhaps from their Beauty and amiable Appearance, which are not without effect even upon the most reprobate and corrupt.

E 4 —abab"d

Ch. IV. — abas'd the Devil stood,
And felt, how awful Goodness is, and saw
VIRTUE in her shape how lovely; saw,
and pin'd
His lost——

P. L. IV. 846.

This being allowed, VICE (Κακία) becomes Feminine of course, as being, in
the συστόξια or Co-ordination of things,
Virtue's natural Opposite (h).

The Fancies, Caprices, and fickle
Changes of Fortune would appear but
awkwardly under a Character, that was
Male: but taken together they make a
very

(h) They are both represented as Females by Xenop-
phon, in the celebrated Story of Hercules, taken from
Prodicus. See Memorab. L. II. c. 1. As to the
συστόξια here mentioned, thus Varro.—Pythagoras
Samius ait omnium rerum initia esse bina: ut finitum &
infinitem, bonum & malum, vitam & mortem, diem &
noctem. De Ling. Lat. L. IV. See also Arisb. Me-
taph. L. I. c. 5. and Ecclesiasticus, Chap. lxii. ver. 24.
very natural Female, which has no small Ch. IV. resemblance to the Coquette of a modern Comedy, bestowing, withdrawing, and shifting her favours, as different Beaus succeed to her good graces.

Transmutat incertos honores,
Nunc mihi, nunc alii benigna. Hor.

Why the Furies were made Female, is not so easy to explain, unless it be that female Passions of all kinds were considered as susceptible of greater excess, than male Passions; and that the Furies were to be represented, as Things superlatively outrageous.

Talibus Alecto dictis exarstit in iras.
At juveni oranti subitus tremor occupat artus:
Diriguere oculi: tot Erinnys sibilat Hydris,
Tantaque se facies aperit: tum flammea torquens

Lumina
(i) The Words above mentioned, *Time, Death, Fortune, Virtue, &c.* in Greek, Latin, French, and most modern Languages, though they are diversified with Genders in the manner described, yet never vary the Gender, which they have once acquired, except in a few instances, where the Gender is doubtful. We cannot say *ν άφρον or ο άφρον*, *hæc Virtus or hic Virtus, la Vertu or le Vertu*, and so of the rest. But it is otherwise in English. We in our own language say, Virtue is *its* own Reward, or Virtue is *her* own Reward; Time maintains *its* wonted Pace, or Time maintains *his* wonted Pace.

There is a singular advantage in this liberty, as it enables us to mark, with a peculiar force, the Distinction between the severe or Logical Stile, and the ornamental or Rhetorical. For thus when we speak of the above Words, and of all others naturally devoid of Sex, as
He, that would see more on this Sub- Ch. IV.
ject, may consult Ammonius the Peripate-
tic

as Neuters, we speak of them as they are, and as be-
comes a logical Inquiry. When we give them Sex, by
making them Masculine or Feminine, they are from
thenceforth personified; are a kind of intelligent Beings,
and become, as such, the proper ornaments either of
Rhetoric or of Poetry.

Thus Milton,

---The Thunder

Wing'd with red light'ning and impetuous rage,
Perhaps hath spent his shafts—— P. Istoff. I. 174.

The Poet, having just before called the Hail, and
Thunder, God's Ministers of Vengeance, and so personi-
fied them, had he afterwards said its shafts for his
Shafts, would have destroyed his own Image, and ap-
proached withal so much nearer to Prose.

The following Passage is from the same Poem.

Should intermitted Vengeance arm again
His red right hand—— P. L II. 174.

In this Place His Hand is clearly preferable either to
Her's or Its, by immediately referring us to God him-
s elf the Avenger.
Ch. IV. tic in his Commentary on the Treatise de Interpretatione, where the Subject is treated at large with respect to the Greek Tongue. We shall only observe, that as all such Speculations are at best but Conjectures, they should therefore be received with

I shall only give one instance more, and quit this Subject.

At his command th' up-rooted Hills retir'd
Each to his place: they heard his voice and went
Obsequious: Heav'n his wonted face renew'd,
And with fresh figures Hill and Valley smil'd.

P. L. VI.

See also ver. 54, 55, of the same Book.

Here all things are personified; the Hills hear, the Valleys smile, and the Face of Heaven is renewed. Suppose then the Poet had been necessitated by the laws of his Language to have said—Each Hill retir'd to its Place—Heaven renewed its wonted face—how profaic and lifeless would these Neuters have appeared; how detrimental to the Prosopopeia, which he was aiming to establish? In this therefore he was happy, that the Language, in which he wrote, imposed no such necessity; and he was too wise a Writer, to impose it on himself. It were to be wished, his Correctors had been as wise on their parts.
with candour, rather than scrutinized Ch.IV.
with rigour. Varro's words on a Subject
near akin are for their aptness and elegance
well worth attending. Non mediocres enim
tenebres in silvâ, ubi haec captanda; neque
êd, quod pervenire volumus, semitae tritae;
neque non in tramitibus quaedam objecta,
quae euntem reternere possunt*.

To conclude this Chapter. We may
collect, from what has been said, that
both Number and Gender appertain to
Words, because in the first place they
appertain to Things; that is to say, be-
dause Substances are Many, and have either
Sex, or no Sex; therefore Substantives have
Number, and are Masculine, Feminine, or
Neuter. There is however this diffe-
rence between the two Attributes: Num-
ber in strictness descends no lower, than
to

* De Ling. Lat. L.IV.
Ch. IV. to the last Rank of Species (k): Gender on the contrary stops not here, but descends to every Individual, however diversified. And so much for Substantives, properly so called.

(k) The reason, why Number goes no lower, is, that it does not naturally appertain to Individuals; the cause of which see before, p. 39.
Concerning Substantives of the Secondary Order.

We are now to proceed to a Secondary Race of Substantives, a Race quite different from any already mentioned, and whose Nature may be explained in the following manner.

Every Object, which presents itself to the Senses or the Intellect, is either then perceived for the first time, or else is recognized, as having been perceived before. In the former case it is called an Object τῆς ὁμολογίας γνώσεως, of the first knowledge or acquaintance (a); in the latter

(a) See Apoll. de Syntaxi, l. i. c. 16. p. 49. l. 2. c. 3. p. 103 Thus Priscian—Interess autem inter demonstrationem & relationem hoc; quod demonstrationis, interrogationi reddita, Primam Cognitionem ostendit; Quis
Now as all Conversation passes between Particulars or Individuals, these will often happen to be reciprocally Objects τῆς δευτέρας γνώσεως, that is to say, till that instant unacquainted with each other. What then is to be done? How shall the Speaker address the other, when he knows not his Name? or how explain himself by his own Name, of which the other is wholly ignorant? Nouns, as they have been described, cannot answer the purpose. The first expedient upon this occasion seems to have been δείκτης, that is, Pointing, or Indication by the Finger or Hand, some traces of which are still to be observed, as a part of that Action, which naturally attends our speaking. But the Authors of Language were

were not content with this. They in-Ch. V.
vented a race of Words to supply this
Pointing; which Words, as they always
stood for Substantives or Nouns, were cha-
acterized by the Name of 'Antωνυμίαι, or
PRONOUNS (b). These also they distin-
guished into three several sorts, calling
them Pronouns of the First, the Second,
and the Third Person, with a view to cer-
tain distinctions, which may be explained
as follows.

SUPPOSE the Parties conversing to be
wholly unacquainted, neither Name nor
Countenance on either side known, and
the

(b) Ἐκεῖνο ἐν Ἀντωνυμία, τὸ μετὰ ΔΕΙΞΕΩΣ
ν' ἀναφοράς ἈΝΤΟΝΟΜΑΖΟΜΕΝΟΝ. Apoll.
de Synt. I. II. c. 5. p. 166. Priscian seems to con-
sider them so peculiarly destined to the expression of In-
dividuals, that he does not say they supply the place of
any Noun, but that of the proper Name only. And
this undoubtedly was their original, and still is their
true and natural use. PRONOMEN est pars orationis,
qua pro nomine proprio uniuscujusque accipitur. Prisc.
I. XII. See also Apoll. L. II. c. 9. p. 117, 148.
Ch. V. the Subject of the Conversation to be the Speaker himself. Here, to supply the place of Pointing by a Word of equal Power, they furnished the Speaker with the Pronoun, I. *I write, I say, I desire,* &c. and as the Speaker is always principal with respect to his own discourse, this they called for that reason the Pronoun of the First Person.

Again, suppose the Subject of the Conversation to be the Party addrest. Here for similar reasons they invented the Pronoun, Thou. *Thou writest, Thou walkest,* &c. and as the Party addrest is next in dignity to the Speaker, or at least comes next with reference to the discourse; this Pronoun they therefore called the Pronoun of the Second Person.

Lastly, suppose the Subject of Conversation neither the Speaker, nor the Party addrest, but some third Object, different from both. Here they provided another Pronoun, He, She, or It, which in
in distinction to the two former was called the Pronoun of the Third Person.

And thus it was that Pronouns came to be distinguished by their respective Persons (c).

(c) The Description of the different Persons here given is taken from Priscian, who took it from Apollonius. Personae Pronominum sunt tres; prima, secunda, tertia. Prima est, cum ipsa, quae loquitur, de se pronuntiat; Secunda, cum de ea pronunciat, ad quem directo fermone loquitur; Tertia, cum de eis, quae nec loquitur, nec ad se directum accipit Sermonem. L. XII. p. 940. Theodore Gaza gives the same Distinctions. Πρώτου (πρώτου τοῦ) εἰς πρώτον ἑαυτὸν ὑπέλθει ό λόγον διέλεξεν, ὥς ἡρα τῷ, προὶ έν άνά λόγω τρίτου, ὥς ἡρα ἐπίζει. Gaz. Gram. L. IV. p. 152.

This account of Persons is far preferable to the common one, which makes the First the Speaker; the Second, the Party addrest; and the Third, the Subject. For tho' the First and Second be as commonly described, one the Speaker, the other the Party addrest; yet till they become subjects of the discourse, they have no existence. Again as to the Third Person's being the Subject, this is a character, which it shares in common with
Ch. V. As to Number, the Pronoun of each Person has it: (I) has the plural (we), because

with both the other Persons, and which can never therefore be called a peculiarity of its own. To explain by an instance or two. When Eneas begins the narrative of his adventures, the second Person immediately appears, because he makes Dido, whom he addresses, the immediate subject of his discourse.

Infandum, Regina, jubes, renovare dolorem.

From hence forward for 1500 Verses (tho' she be all that time the party adressed) we hear nothing farther of this Second Person, a variety of other Subjects filling up the Narrative.

In the mean time the First Person may be seen everywhere, because the Speaker everywhere is himself the Subject. They were indeed Events, as he says himself,

—queque ipse miserrima vidi,
Et quorum pars magna fui——

Not that the Second Person does not often occur in the course of this Narrative; but then it is always by a Figure of Speech, when those, who by their absence are in fact so many Third Persons, are converted into Second
because there may be many Speakers at Ch. V. once of the same Sentiment; as well as one, who, including himself, speaks the Sentiment of many. (Thou) has the plural (you), because a Speech may be spoken to many, as well as to one. (He) has the plural (they) because the Subject of discourse is often many at once.

But tho' all these Pronouns have Number, it does not appear either in Greek, or Latin, or any modern Language, that those of the first and second Person carry the distinctions of Sex. The reason seems to cond Persons by being introduced as present. The real Second Person (Dido) is never once hinted.

Thus far as to Virgil. But when we read Euclid, we find neither First Person, nor Second in any part of the whole Work. The reason is, that neither Speaker nor Party addrest (in which light we may always view the Writer and his Reader) can possibly become the Subject of pure Mathematics, nor indeed can any thing else, except abstract Quantity, which neither speaks itself, nor is spoken to by another.
Ch. V. to be, that the Speaker and Hearer being generally present to each other, it would have been superfluous to have marked a distinction by Art, which from Nature and even Drefs was commonly \(d\) apparent on both sides. But this does not hold with respect to the third Person, of whose Character and Distinctions, (including Sex among the rest) we often know no more, then what we learn from the discourse. And hence it is that in most Languages the third Person has its Genders, and that even English (which allows its Adjectives no Genders at all) has in this Pronoun the triple \(e\) distinction of He, She, and It.

Hence


\(e\) The Utility of this Distinction may be better found in supposing it away. Suppose for example we should read in history these words—He caused him
Hence too we see the reason why a single Pronoun (f) to each Person, an I to destroy him—and that we were to be informed the [He], which is here thrice repeated, stood each time for something different, that is to say, for a Man, for a Woman, and for a City, whose Names were Alexander, Thais, and Persepolis. Taking the Pronoun in this manner, divested of its Genders, how would it appear, which was destroyed; which was the destroyer; and which the cause, that moved to the destruction? But there are not such doubts, when we hear the Genders distinguished; when instead of the ambiguous Sentence, He caused him to destroy him, we are told with the proper distinctions, that she caused him to destroy it. Then we know with certainty, what before we could not: that the Promoter was the Woman; that her Instrument was the Hero; and that the Subject of their Cruelty was the unfortunate City.

(f) Quæritur tamen cur prima quidem Persōna & secunda singula Pronomina habēant, tertiam vero sex diversae indicent voces? Ad quod respondendum est, quod prima quidem & secunda Persōna ideo non agent diversis vocibus, quod semper præsentēs inter se sunt, & demonstrationes; tertia vero Persōna modo demonstrativa est, ut, Hic, Ist; modo relativa, ut Is, Ipsē, &c. Priscian, L. XII. p. 933.
Ch. V. to the First, and a Thou to the Second, are abundantly sufficient to all the purposes of Speech. But it is not so with respect to the Third Person. The various relations of the various Objects exhibited by this (I mean relations of near and distant, present and absent, same and different, definite and indefinite, &c.) made it necessary that here there should not be one, but many Pronouns, such as He, This, That, Other, Any, Some, &c.

It must be confessed indeed, that all these Words do not always appear as Pronouns. When they stand by themselves, and represent some Noun, (as when we say, This is Virtue, or δείκτης, Give me That) then are they Pronouns. But when they are associated to some Noun (as when we say, This Habit is Virtue; or δείκτης, That Man defrauded me) then as they supply not the place of a Noun, but only serve to ascertain one, they fall rather into the Species of Definitives or Articles. That there is indeed
deed a near relation between Pronouns and Articles, the old Grammarians have all acknowledged, and some words it has been doubtful to which Class to refer. The best rule to distinguish them is this — The genuine Pronoun *always stands by itself*, assuming the Power of a Noun, and supplying its place — The genuine Article *never stands by itself*, but appears at all times associated to something else, requiring a Noun for its support, as much as Attributives or (g) Adjectives.

As

(g) Τὸ Ἀρθρὸν μετὰ ὄνοματι, ἐν Ἁπολλ. L. I. c. 3. p. 22. Εἰς τὸν πέρα τὸ ὄνομα παρατηρήσεως αὐτοῦ, εἰς τὴν ὑποτελείαν ἀντωνυμίαν μετατίθει. Now Articles themselves, when they quit their Connection with Nouns, pass into such Pronoun, as is proper upon the occasion. Ibid. Again — Ὁταν τὸ Ἀρθρὸν μη μετὰ ὄνοματι παραλαμβάνεται, τείνεται δε σύνταξιν ὀνόματι, ὑπό της ἁπλοῦ ἀναφοράς.
Ch. V. As to the Coalescence of these Pronouns, it is, as follows. The First or Second

προσελεύμεθα, ἐπι τάς ἀνάγκας εἰς ἀδιανυμίαν μετα-
ληψίιται, εὐγε ἔκ ἐγνώμενον μετ' ὀνόματι δυνάμει 
αὐτῷ ὀνόματι πραγμάτων. When the Article is assumed 
without the Noun, and has (as we explained before) the 
same Syntax, which the Noun has; it must of absolute ne-
cessity be admitted for a Pronoun, because it appears with-
out a Noun, and yet is in power assumed for one. Ejusd. 
L. II. c. 8. p. 113. L. I. c. 45. p. 96. Inter Pro-
nomina & Articullos hoc interesse, quod Pronomina ea pu-
tantur, quae, cum sola sint, vicem nominis compleunt, ut 
QUIS, ILLE, ISTE: Articuli vero cum Pronominibus, 
aunt Nominibus, aut Participlis adjunguntur. Donât. 
Gram. p. 1753:

Prîscian, speaking of the Stoics, says as follows; 
Articulis autem Pronomina connumerantes, fi-
nitos ea Articullos appellabant; ìpsych autem Ar-
ticulos, quibus nos carcens, infinitos Articulos 
dicebant. Vel, ut alií dicunt, Articulas connumerabant 
Pronominibus, & Articularia eos Pronominâ 
of Quisque and Hic, calls them both Articules, 
the first indefinite, the second definite. De Ling. Lat. 
L. VII. See also L. IX. p. 132. Voscius indeed in 
his Analogi (L. I. c. 1) opposes this Doctrine, be-
cause Hic has not the same power with the Greek Ar-
ticle,
Second will, either of them, by them—Ch. V., selves coalesce with the Third, but not with each other. For example, it is good sense, as well as good Grammar, to say in any Language—I am He—Thou art He—but we cannot say—I am Thou—nor Thou art I. The reason is, there is no absurdity for the Speaker to be the Subject also of the Discourse, as when we say, I am He; or for the Person address'd; as when we say, Thou art He. But for the same Person, in the same circumstances, to be at once the Speaker, and the Party address'd, this is impossible; and so therefore is the Coalescence of the First and Second Person.

And now perhaps we have seen enough of Pronouns, to perceive how they differ from

ticle, &c. But he did not enough attend to the antient Writers on this Subject, who considered all Words, as Articles, which being associated to Nouns (and not standing in their place) served in any manner to ascertain, and determine their Signification.
Ch. V. from others Substantives. The others are

Primary, these are their Substitutes; a kind of secondary Race, which were taken in aid, when for reasons already (b) mentioned the others could not be used. It is moreover by means of these, and of Articles, which are nearly allied to them, that

(b) See these reasons at the beginning of this chapter, of which reasons the principal one is, that "no Noun, properly so called, implies its own Presence. " It is therefore to ascertain such Presence, that the Pronoun is taken in aid; and hence it is it becomes "equivalent to δείκνυς, that is, to Pointing or Indication "by the Finger." It is worth remarking in that Verse of Persius,

Sed pulchrum est digito monstrari, & dicier, Hic est,

how the δείκνυς, and the Pronoun are introduced together, and made to co-operate to the same end.

Sometimes by virtue of δείκνυς the Pronoun of the third Person stands for the first.

Quod si militiibus parces, erit hic quoque Miles. That is, I also will be a Soldier.

Tibul. L. II. El. 6. v. 7. See Vulpian.
that "Language, tho' in itself only sig-
ificant of general Ideas, is brought down
*to denote that infinitude of Particulars,
*which are for ever arising, and ceasing
*to be." But more of this hereafter in
a proper place.

As to the three orders of Pronouns al-
ready mentioned, they may be called Pre-
positive, as may indeed all Substantives,
because they are capable of introducing
or leading a Sentence, without having
reference to any thing previous. But be-
sides those there is another Pronoun

(in

It may be observed too, that even in Epiftolary
Correspondence, and indeed in all kinds of Writing,
where the Pronouns I and You make their appear-
ance, there is a sort of implied Presence, which they
are supposed to indicate, though the parties are in fact
at ever so great a distance. And hence the rise of
that distinction in Apollonius, τὰς μὲν τὰς ὑψίων ἱναι
δίσεις, τὰς δὲ τὰ νῦ, that some Indications are ocu-
lar, and some are mental. De Syntaxi, L. II. c. 3.
p. 104.
Ch. V. (in Greek ὁς, ὅς (i); in Latin, Qui; in English, Who, Which, That) a Pronoun having a character peculiar to itself, the nature of which may be explained as follows.

**Suppose I was to say—**Light is a Body, Light moves with great celerity.—These

(i) The Greeks, it must be confessed, call this Pronoun ὲποταχλικον ἄγθηον, the Subjunctive Article. Yet, as it should seem, this is but an improper Appellation. Apollonius, when he compares it to the ἡποταχλικον or true Prepositional Article, not only confesses it to differ, as being expressed by a different Word, and having a different place in every Sentence; but in Syntax he adds, *it is wholly different.* De Syntax. L. I. c. 43. p. 91. Theodore Gaza acknowledges the same, and therefore adds—ὁθεν ὅν ἢ ἄν κυρίως ἄν ἐὰν ἄγθηον τακλ—*for these reasons this (meaning the Subjunctive) cannot properly be an Article.* And just before he says, κυρίως μεμάν ἄγθηον το ἡποταχλικον—*however properly speaking it is the Prepositional is the Article.* Gram. Introd. L. IV. The Latins therefore have undoubtedly done better in ranging it with the Pronouns.
These would apparently be two distinct Ch. V. Sentences. Suppose, instead of the Second, Light, I were to place the prepositive Pronoun, it, and say—Light is a Body; it moves with great celerity—the Sentences would still be distinct and two. But if I add a Connective (as for Example an and) saying—Light is a Body, and it moves with great celerity—I then by Connection make the two into one, as by cementing many Stones I make one Wall.

Now it is in the united Powers of a Connective, and another Pronoun, that we may see the force, and character of the Pronoun here treated. Thus therefore, if in the place of and it, we substitute that, or which, saying Light is a Body, which moves with great celerity—the Sentence still retains its Unity and Perfection, and becomes if possible more compact than before. We may with just reason therefore call this Pronoun the Subjunctive, because it cannot (like the
(k) Hence we see why the Pronoun here mentioned is always necessarily the Part of some complex Sentence, which Sentence contains, either expressed or understood, two Verbs, and two Nominatives.

Thus in that Verse of Horace,

Qui metuens vivit, liber mihi non erit unquam.

Ille non erit liber—is one Sentence; qui metuens vivit—is another. Ille and Qui are the two Nominatives; Erit and Vivit, the two Verbs; and so in all other instances.

The following passage from Apollonius (though somewhat corrupt in more places than one) will serve to shew, whence the above Speculations are taken. Τὸ ὑποταξικὸν ἄρθρον ἐπὶ ῥήμα ιδίου φέρεται, συνεδριαμένον διὰ τὸς ἀναφορᾶς τῷ προκειμένῳ δύο ματι. Καὶ ἑνεχθὲν ἀπὸ τὸν λόγον ὁ παρισάντας καὶ τὴν τῶν δύο ῥημάτων σύνεξεν (λέγω τὴν ἐν τῷ δύο ματι, καὶ τὸν ἐν αὐτῷ τῷ ἄρθρῳ) ὑπὲρ πάλιν παρείπετο τῷ ΚΑΙ συνεϊσμῷ. Κοινῶν μὲν (lege ΤΟ ΚΑΙ γὰρ κοινὸν μὲν) παρεξελάμ-
The Application of this Subjunctive, Ch. V.
like the other Pronouns, is universal. It may

The subjunctive Article, (that is, the Pronoun here mentioned) is applied to a Verb of its own, and yet is connected withal to the antecedent Noun. Hence it can never serve to constitute a simple Sentence, by reason of the Syntax of the two Verbs, I mean that which respects the Noun or Antecedent, and that which respects the Article or Relative. The same too follows as to the Conjunction, and. This Copulative assumes the Antecedent Noun, which is capable of being applied to many Subjects, and by connecting to it a new Sentence, of necessity assumes a new Verb also. And hence it is that the Words—the Grammarian came, who discouraged—form in power nearly the same sentence, as if we were to say—the Grammarian came, and discouraged. Apoll. de Syntaxi, L. I. c. 43. p. 92. See also an ingenious French Treatise, called Grammaire generale & raisonnée, Chap. IX.

The Latins, in their Structure of this Subjunctive, seem to have well represented its compound Nature of part Pronoun, and part Connective, in forming their

Book the First.
Ch. V. may be the Substitute of all kinds of Substantives, natural, artificial, or abstract; as well as general, special, or particular. We may say, the Animal, Which, &c. the Man, Whom, &c. the Ship, Which, &c. Alexander, Who, &c. Bucephalus, That, &c. Virtue, Which, &c. &c.

Nay, it may even be the Substitute of all the other Pronouns, and is of course therefore expressive of all three Persons. Thus we say, I, who now read, have near finished this Chapter; Thou, who now readest: He, who now readest, &c. &c.

And thus is this Subjunctive truly a Pronoun from its Substitution, there being

qui & quis from que and is, or (if we go with Scaliger to the Greek) from kai and ος, kai and 'o. Scal. de Caus. Ling. Lat. c. 127.

Homer also expresses the Force of this Subjunctive, Pronoun or Article, by help of the Prepositive and a Consecutive, exactly consonant to the Theory here established, See Iliad. A. ver. 270, 553. N. 571. II. 54, 157, 158.
ing no Substantive existing, in whose place Ch. V.
it may not stand. At the same time, it is
essentially distinguished from the other Pro-
nouns, by this peculiar, that it is not only
a Substitute, but withal a Connective (1).

AND

(1) Before we quit this Subject, it may not be im-
proper to remark, that in the Greek and Latin Tongues
the two principal Pronouns, that is to say, the First
and Second Person, the Ego and the Tu are implied in
the very Form of the Verb itself (γεωφης, γεωφης,
scribo, scribis) and are for that reason never express,
unles it be to mark a Contradistinction; such as in
Virgil,

Nos patriam fugimus; Tu, Tityre, lentus in umbra
Formosam resonare doce, &c.

This however is true with respect only to the Casus
rectus, or Nominative of these Pronouns, but not with
respect to their oblique Cases, which must always be
added, because tho’ we see the Ego in Amo, and the
Tu in Amas, we see not the Te or Me in Amat, or
Amant.

Yet even these oblique Cases appear in a different
manner, according as they mark Contradistinction,
or not. If they contradictinguish, then are they com-
monly placed at the beginning of the Sentence, or at
least before the Verb, or leading Substantive.
Ch. V. And now to conclude what we have said concerning Substantives. All Substantives

Thus Virgil,

Quid Thesca, magnum
Quid memorem Alciden? Et mi genus ab Iove summo.

Thus Homer,

'TMIN μίν Ἰεόν δόντι
Παίδα δε ΜΟI λύσωτε φίλων

where the 'Τμίν and the Μοι stand, as contradistinguished, and both have precedence of their respective Verbs, the 'Τμίν even leading the whole Sentence. In other instances, these Pronouns commonly take their place behind the Verb, as may be seen in examples every where obvious. The Greek Language went farther still. When the oblique Case of these Pronouns happened to contradistinguish, they assumed a peculiar Accent of their own, which gave them the name of ἐθογνωμονικα, or Pronouns uprightly accented. When they marked no such opposition, they not only took their place behind the Verb, but even gave it their Accent, and (as it were) inclined themselves upon it. And hence they acquired the name of ἐγκλίνουσαι, that is, Leaning or Inclining Pronouns. The Greeks too had in the first person 'Εμι, 'Εμοί, 'Εμέ for Contradistinctives, and Με, Μοι, Μέ for Enclitics. And hence it was that Apollonius contended, that in the passage above quoted from the first Iliad, we should read παίδα δ' 'ΕΜΟI, for
STANTIVES are either Primary, or Se-Ch. V. condary, that is to say, according to a Language more familiar and known, are either NOUNS or PRONOUNS. The Nouns denote Substances, and those either Natural, Artificial, or Abstract*. They moreover denote Things either General, or Special, or Particular. The Pronouns, their Substitutes, are either Prepositive, or Subjunctive. The Prepositive is distinguished into three Orders called the First, the Second, and the Third Person. The Subjunctive includes the powers

for χαίδε ἡ ΜΟΙ, on account of the Contradistinction, which there occurs between the Grecians and Chryses. See Apoll. de Syntaxi L. I. c. 3. p. 20. L. II. c. 2. p. 102, 103.

This Diversity between the Contradistinctive Pronouns, and the Enclitic, is not unknown even to the English Tongue. When we say, Give me Content, the (Me) in this case is a perfect Enclitic. But when we say, Give Me Content, Give Him his thousands, the (Me) and (Him) are no Enclitics, but as they stand in opposition, assume an Accent of their own, and so become the true ἐκπονυκίων.

* See before p. 37, 38.
Ch. V. of all those three, having superadded, as of its own, the peculiar force of a Conneotive.

Having done with Substantives, we now proceed to Attributives.
Concerning Attributives.

A TTRIBUTIVES are all those principal Words, that denote Attributes, considered as Attributes. Such for example are the Words, Black, White, Great, Little, Wise, Eloquent, Writeth, Wrote, Writing, &c. (a).

How-

(a) In the above lift of Words are included what Grammarians called Adjectives, Verbs, and Participles, in as much as all of them equally denote the Attributes of Substance. Hence it is, that as they are all from their very nature the Predicates in a Proposition (being all predicated of some Subject or Substance, Snow is white, Cicero writeth, &c.) hence I say the Appellation PHMA or Verb is employed by Logicians in an extended Sense to denote them all. Thus Ammonius explaining the reason, why Aristotle in his Tract de Interpretatione calls λευκός a Verb, tells us ὁ ἄλογον οὖς ἡμῶν, ἢσανοτρέμενον ἐγὼ ἐν φροτάσει ἡμῶν, ἡ ΠΗΜΑ καλεῖναι, that every Sound articulate, that forms the
Ch. VI. However, previously to these, and to every other possible Attribute, whatever a thing may be, whether black or white, square or round, wise or eloquent, writing or thinking, it must first of necessity exist, before it can possibly be any thing else. For Existence may be considered as an universal Genus, to which all things of all kinds are at all times to be referred. The Verbs therefore, which denote it, claim precedence of all others, as being essential to the very being of every Proposition, in which they may still be found, either express, or by implication; express, as when we say, The Sun is bright; by

---

Predicate in a Proposition, is called a Verb. p. 24. Edit. Ven. Priscian's observation, though made on another occasion, is very pertinent to the present. Non Declinatio, sed proprietas exutienda est significacionis. L. II. p. 576. And in another place he says—non similitudo declinationis omnimodo conjungit vel discernit partes orationis inter se, sed vis ipsius significacionis. L. XIII. p. 970.
implication, as when we say, The Sun Ch. VI. rises, which means, when resolved, The Sun is rising (b).

The Verbs, Is, Groweth, Becometh, Est, Fit, ὑπάρχει, ἔσται, ἔλει, γίγνεται, are all of them used to express this general Genus. The Latins have called them Verba Substantiva, Verbs Substantive, but the Greeks Ῥήματα ὑπάρχον, Verbs of Existence, a Name more apt, as being of greater latitude, and comprehending equally as well Attribute, as Substance. The principal of those Verbs, and which we shall here particularly consider, is the Verb, ἔσται, Est, Is.

Now all Existence is either absolute or qualified—absolute, as when we say, B is; qualified, as when we say, B is an Animal; B is black, is round, &c.

With

(b) See Metaphys. Aristot. L. V. c. 7. Edit. Du-Vall.
Ch. VI. With respect to this difference, the Verb (is) can by itself express absolute Existence, but never the qualified, without subjoining the particular Form, because the Forms of Existence being in number infinite, if the particular Form be not expressed, we cannot know which is intended. And hence it follows, that when (is) only serves to subjoin some such Form, it has little more force, than that of a mere Assertion. It is under the same character, that it becomes a latent part in every other Verb, by expressing that Assertion, which is one of their Essentials. Thus, as was observed just before, Writeth means, is writing; Riseth, is writing.

Again—As to Existence in general, it is either mutable, or immutable; mutable, as in the Objects of Sensation; immutable, as in the Objects of Intelligence and Science. Now mutable Objects exist all in Time, and admit the several Distinctions
functions of present, past, and future. Ch. VI.

But immutable Objects know no such Distinctions, but rather stand opposed to all things temporary.

And hence two different Significations of the substantive Verb (is) according as it denotes mutable, or immutable Being.

For example, if we say, *This Orange is ripe,* (is) meaneth, that it existeth so now at this present, in opposition to past time, when it was green, and to future time, when it will be rotten.

But if we say, *The Diameter of the Square is incommensurable with its side,* we do not intend by (is) that it is incommensurable now, having been formerly commensurable, or being to become so hereafter; on the contrary we intend that *Perfection of Existence,* to which *Time and its Distinctions* are utterly unknown. It is under the same meaning we employ this
this Verb, when we say, Truth is, or, God is. The opposition is not of Time present to other Times, but of necessary Existence to all temporary Existence whatever (c). And so much for Verbs of Existence, commonly called Verbs Substantive.

We are now to descend to the common Herd of Attributives, such as black and white, to write, to speak, to walk. &c. among which when compared and opposed to each other, one of the most eminent distinctions appears to be this. Some, by being joined to a proper Substantive

(c) Cum enim dicimus, Deus est, non cum dicimus, nunc esse, sed tantum in Substantia esse, ut hoc ad immutabilitatem petius substantiae, quam ad tempus aliquod referatur. Si autem dicimus, dies est, adnullam diei substantiam pertinet, nisi tantum ad temporis constitutionem; hoc enim, quod significat, tale est, tanquam si dicamus, nunc est. Quare cum dicimus esse, ut substantiam designemus, simpliciter est addimus; cum vero ita ut aliquid presens significetur, secundum Tempus, Boeth. in Lib. de Interpr. p. 307. See also Plat. Tim. p. 37; 38. Edit. Serrani.
stantive make without farther help a per-
fect assertive Sentence; while the rest, tho' otherwise perfect, are in this respect deficient.

To explain by an example. When we say, Cicero eloquent, Cicero wise, these are imperfect Sentences, though they denote a Substance and an Attribute. The reason is, that they want an Assertion, to shew that such Attribute appertains to such Substance. We must therefore call in the help of an Assertion elsewhere, an (is) or a (was) to complete the Sentence, saying, Cicero is wise, Cicero was eloquent. On the contrary, when we say, Cicero writeth, Cicero walketh, in instances like these there is no such occasion, because the Words (writeth) and (walketh) imply in their own Form not an Attribute only, but an Assertion likewise. Hence it is they may be resolved, the one into Is and Writing, the other into Is and Walking.

Now
Ch. VI. Now all those Attributives, which have this complex Power of denoting both an Attribute and an Assertion, make that Species of Words, which Grammarians call Verbs. If we resolve this complex Power into its distinct Parts, and take the Attribute alone without the Assertion, then have we Participles. All other Attributives, besides the two Species before, are included together in the general Name of Adjectives.

And thus it is, that all Attributives are either Verbs, Participles, or Adjectives.

Besides the Distinctions abovementioned, there are others, which deserve notice. Some Attributes have their Essence in Motion; such are to walk, to fly, to strike, to live. Others have it in the privation of Motion; such are to stop, to rest, to cease, to die. And lastly, others have it in subjects, which have nothing to do.
do with either Motion or its Privation; Ch. VI.
such are the Attributes of, Great and Little, White and Black, Wise and Foolish, and in a word the several Quantities, and Qualities of all Things. Now these last are Adjectives; those which denote Motions, or their Privation, are either Verbs or Participles.

And this Circumstance leads to a farther Distinction, which may be explained as follows. That all Motion is in Time, and therefore, wherever it exists, implies Time as its concomitant, is evident to all and requires no proving. But besides this, all Rest or Privation of Motion implies Time likewise. For how can a thing be said to rest or stop, by being in one Place for one Instant only?—so too is that thing, which moves with the greatest velocity. † To stop therefore or rest, is to be in one Place for more than one Instant, that is to say, during

† Thus Proclus in the Beginning of his Treatise concerning Motion. Ηρμηνεύει τὸ πρότερον καὶ ἔτερον ἐν τῷ αὐτῷ τόπῳ δι', καὶ αὐτῷ, καὶ τὰ μέρη.
Ch. VI. during an Extension between two Instants, and this of course gives us the Idea of Time. As therefore Motions and their Privation imply Time as their concomitant, so Verbs, which denote them, come to denote Time also (d). And hence the origin and use of Tenses, "which are so many different forms, assigned to each Verb, "to shew, without altering its principal "meaning the various Times in which "such meaning may exist." Thus Scribit, Scripsit, Scripsisset, and Scribet, denote all equally the Attribute, To Write, while the difference between them, is, that they denote Writing in different Times.

Should

(d) The antient Authors of Dialectic or Logic have well described this Property. The following is part of their Definition of a Verb—πράων δε ἐστι τὸ προσπομανεῖν κρόνον, a Verb is something, which signifies Time over and above (for such is the force of the Proposition, Ἕκτος.) If it should be asked, over and above what? It may be answered over and above its principal Signification, which is to denote some moving and energizing Attribute. See Arist. de Interpret. c. 3. together with his Commentators Ammonius and Boethius.
Should it be asked, whether Time itself may not become upon occasion the Verb's principal Signification; it is answered, No. And this appears, because the same Time may be denoted by different verbs (as in the words, *writeth* and *speaketh*) and different Times by the same Verb (as in the words, *writeth* and *wrote*) neither of which could happen, were Time any thing more, than a mere Concomitant. Add to this, that when words denote Time, not collaterally, but principally, they cease to be verbs, and become either adjectives, or substantives. Of the adjective kind are *Timely, Yearly, Dayly, Hourly, &c.* of the substantive kind are *Time, Year, Day, Hour, &c.*

The most obvious division of *Time* is into Present, Past, and Future, nor is any language complete, whose verbs have not Tenses, to mark these distinctions. But we may go still farther. Time past and future are both infinitely extended.

Hence
Ch. VI. Hence it is that in universal Time past we may assume many particular Times past, and in universal Time future, many particular Times future, some more, some less remote, and corresponding to each other under different relations. Even present Time itself is not exempt from these differences, and as necessarily implies some degree of Extension, as does every given line, however minute.

Here then we are to seek for the reason, which first introduced into language that variety of Tenses. It was not it seems enough to denote indefinitely (or by Aorists) mere Present, Past, or Future, but it was necessary on many occasions to define with more precision, what kind of Past, Present, or Future. And hence the multiplicity of Futures, Präteritis, and even Present Tenses, with which all languages are found to abound, and without which it would be difficult to ascertain our Ideas.
However as the knowledge of Tenses Ch. VI. depends on the theory of Time, and this is a subject of no mean speculation, we shall reserve it by itself for the following chapter.
C. VII. **Time** and **Space** have this in common, that they are both of them by nature things continuous, and as such they both of them imply Extension. Thus between London and Salisbury there is the Extension of Space, and between Yesterday and To-morrow, the Extension of Time. But in this they differ, that all the parts of Space exist at once and together, while those of Time only exist in Transition or Succession (a). Hence then we may gain some Idea of **Time**, by considering it under the notion

(a) See Vol. I. p. 275. Note XIII. To which we may add, what is said by Ammonius—συνε γὰρ ὁ Χρόνος ἐλατε ὑπάται, άλλ' ἔνα μόνον τὸ Νῦν. ἐν γὰρ τῷ πρόσθεται ὁ θείεσθαι τὸ εἶναι ἔχει. **Time** doth not subsist the whole at once, but only in a single **Now** or **Instant**; for it hath its Existence in becoming and in ceasing to be. Amm in Predicam. p. 32. b.
notion of a transient Continuity. Hence C. VII. also, as far as the affections and properties of Transition go, Time is different from Space; but as to those of Extension and Continuity, they perfectly coincide.

Let us take, for example, such a part of Space, as a Line. In every given Line we may assume any where a Point, and therefore in every given Line there may be assumed infinite Points. So in every given Time we may assume any where a Now or Instant, and therefore in every given Time there may be assumed infinite Nows or Instants.

Farther still—A Point is the Bound of every finite Line; and a Now or Instant, of every finite Time. But altho' they are Bounds, they are neither of them Parts, neither the Point of any Line, nor the Now or Instant of any Time. If this appear strange, we may remember, that the parts of any thing extended are necessarily
C. VII. Sarily extended also, it being essential to their character, *that they should measure their Whole*. But if a *Point* or *Now* were extended, each of them would contain within itself *infinite other Points*, and *infinite other Nows* (for these may be assumed infinitely within the minutest Extension) and this, it is evident, would be absurd and impossible.

These assertions therefore being admitted, and both *Points* and *Nows* being taken as *Bounds*, but not as *Parts* (*b*), it will follow,

---

(*b*) — Ψανερὰ ὃτι ἕδε μόριον τὸ ἁργά τὸ χρόνον, ὥσπερ ἐν ᾧ ἄι συγμαὶ τὰς γραμμὰς· ἀι δὲ γραμμαί ὅσον τῆς μίας μόρια. It is evident that a *Now* or *Instant* is no more a part of *Time*, than *Points* are of a *Line*. The parts indeed of one *Line* are two other *Lines*. Natur. Aulc. L. IV. c. 17. And not long before—Τὸ δὲ ἡ περὶ τὸ το ἁργά, καὶ τὸν μεγίστου ὁ περὶ τοῦ δόλου ἐκ τῶν μεγίστων· δὲ ΧΡΟΝΟΣ ἐ δοκεῖ τὸν μεγίστου ἐκ τῶν ἁργών. *A Now* is no Part of *Time*; for a *Part* is able to measure its *Whole*, and the *Whole* is necessarily made up of its *Parts*; but *Time* doth not appear to be made up of *Nows*. Ibid. c. 14.
follow, that in the same manner as the same C. VII. 

Point may be the End of one Line, and the 
Beginning of another, so the same Now or 
Instant may be the End of one Time, 
and the Beginning of another. Let us 
suppose for example, the Lines, A B, B C.

I say that the Point B, is the End of the 
Line A B, and the Beginning of the Line, 
B C. In the same manner let us suppose 
A B, B C to represent certain Times, and 
let B be a Now or Instant. In such case 
I say that the Instant B is the End of the 
Time A B, and the Beginning of the Time, 
B C. I say likewise of these two Times, 
that with respect to the Now or Instant, 
which they include, the first of them is 
necessarily Past Time, as being previous 
to it; the other is necessarily Future, as 
being subsequent. As therefore every Now 

H 4     or
C. VII. or Instant always exists in Time, and without being Time, is Time's Bound; the Bound of Completion to the Past, and the Bound of Commencement to the Future: from hence we may conceive its nature or end, which is to be the Medium of Continuity between the Past and the Future, so as to render Time, thro' all its Parts, one Entire and Perfect Whole (c).

From the above speculations, there follow some conclusions, which may be perhaps called paradoxes, till they have been attentively considered. In the first place there cannot (strictly speaking) be any such

(c) Τὸ δὲ Νῦν ἐστὶ συνέχεια χρόνου, ὡσπερ ἑλέχθω. συνέχεια γὰρ τοῦ χρόνου, τοῦ παρελθόντα καὶ ἐσόμενου, καὶ ὅλως ἑτέρας χρόνως ἐστι ἐστὶ γὰρ τὸ μὲν ὥρχη, τὸ δὲ τελευτή. A Now or Instant is (as was said before) the Continuity or holding together of Time; for it makes Time continuous, the past and the future, and is in general its boundary, as being the beginning of one Time and the ending of another. Natur. Acscult. L IV. c. 19. Συνέχεια in this place means not Continuity, as standing for Extension, but rather that junctio or Holding together, by which Extension is imparted to other things.
such thing as Time present. For if all Time C. VII.
be transient as well as continuous, it cannot
like a Line be present all together, but part
will necessarily be gone, and part be com-
ing. If therefore any portion of its con-
tinuity were to be present at once, it would
so far quit its transient nature, and be Time
no longer. But if no portion of its con-
tinuity can be thus present, how can Time
possibly be present, to which such Contin-
uity is essential?

Farther than this—If there be no
such thing as Time Present, there can be no
Sensation of Time by any one of the senses.
For all Sensation is of the † Present only,
the Past being preserved not by Sense but by
Memory, and the Future being anticipated
by Prudence only and wise Foresight.

But if no Portion of Time be the ob-
ject of any Sensation; farther, if the Pre-
sent

† Ταυτῇ γὰρ (αἰσθήσει ἴτς.) ὤτε τὸ μέλλον, ὥστε
τὸ γνωσμένον γνωρίζομεν, ἄλλα τὸ παρόν μόνον.
Αἰγ. πεί μνημ. Α. ν.
sent never exist; if the Past be no more; if the Future be not as yet; and if these are all the parts, out of which Time is compounded: how strange and shadowy a Being do we find it? How nearly approaching to a perfect Non-entity (d)? Let us try however, since the senses fail us, if we have not faculties of higher power, to seize this fleeting Being.

The World has been likened to a variety of Things, but it appears to resemble no one more, than some moving spectacle.
tacle (such as a procession or a triumph) C. VII.
that abounds in every part with splendid objects, some of which are still departing, as fast as others make their appearance. The Senses look on, while the sight passes, perceiving as much as is immediately present, which they report with tolerable accuracy to the Soul's superior powers. Having done this, they have done their duty, being concerned with nothing, save what is present and instantaneous. But to the Memory, to the Imagination, and above all to the Intellect, the several Now or Instants are not lost, as to the Senses, but are preserved and made objects of steady comprehension, however in their own nature they may be transitory and passing. "Now it is from contemplating two "or more of these Instants under one view, "together with that Interval of Continuity, "which subsists between them, that we "acquire insensibly the Idea of Time (c)."

For

(c) Τότε Φαμεν γεγονέων χρόνων, ὅταν τῷ πρώτῳ ἦ ὑπερ εἰς τῷ κινήσεω διαθέθην λάθεύειν. Ὁρίζομεν...
C. VII. For example: The Sun rises; this I remember; it rises again; this too I remember. These Events are not together; there is

It is then we say there has been Time, when we can acquire a Sensation of prior and subsequent in Motion. But we distinguish and set the two, by considering one first, then the other, together with an interval between them different from both. For as often as we conceive the Extremes to be different from the Mean, and the Soul talks of two Nows, one prior and the other subsequent, then it is we say there is Time, and this it is we call Time. Natural. Aucult. L. IV. c. 16. Themistius's Comment upon this passage is to the same purpose. "Оταν γὰρ οὐς εἰς ὀνακοποιεῖς τὰ ἝΤΩΝ, ὀ χθεὶς εἴπεν, ἔτερον ωάλιν εἴπη τὸ τῆμερον, τότε εἰς ἁρένου εὐθὺς ἐνεκόκειν, ὅπο τὸν δύο ἝΤΩΝ ὅριζόμενον, οἶνον ὅπο ἀπεράτων δύναιν εἰς ἄτω λέγειν ἑκεῖ, ὅτι διόσον εἰς πεντεκάδεκα ώραν, ἡ ἐκκαίδεκα, οἶνον εἰς ἀπείρο γραμμῆς πυγμαίαν δύο σημεῖας ἀποτεί-μνημεν. For when the Mind, remembering the Now, which it talked of yesterday, talks again of another Now to-day, then it is it immediately has an idea of Time, terminated by these two Nows, as by two Boundaries; and thus is it enabled to say, that the Quantity is of fifteen, or of sixteen hours, as if it were to sever a Cubit's length from an infinite Line by two Points. Themist. Op. edit. Aldi. p 45. b.
is an *Extension* between them—not how-—ever of *Space*, for we may suppose the place of rising the same, or at least to exhibit no sensible difference. Yet still we recognize *some* Extension between them. Now what is this Extension, *but a natural Day*? And what is that, *but pure Time*? It is after the same manner, by recognizing two new Moons, and the Extension between these: two vernal Equinoxes, and the Extension between these; that we gain Ideas of other Times, such as *Months* and *Years*, which are all so many Intervals, described as above; that is to say, *passing Intervals of Continuity between two Instants viewed together*.

*And thus it is the Mind acquires the Idea of Time.* But this Time it must be remembered is *Past Time only*, which is always the *first* Species, that occurs to the human intellect. How then do we acquire the Idea of *Time Future*? The answer is, we acquire it *by Anticipation*. Should it be demanded still farther, *And what is Anticipation?* We answer, that in this
C. VII. this case it is a kind of reasoning by analogy from similar to similar; from successions of events, that are past already, to similar successions, that are presumed hereafter. For example: I observe as far back as my memory can carry me, how every day has been succeeded by a night; that night, by another day; that day, by another night; and so downwards in order to the Day that is now. Hence then I anticipate a similar succession from the present Day, and thus gain the Idea of days and nights in futurity. After the same manner, by attending to the periodical returns of New and Full Moons; of Springs, Summers, Autumns and Winters, all of which in Time past I find never to have failed, I anticipate a like orderly and diversified succession, which makes Months, and Seasons, and Years, in Time future.

We go farther than this, and not only thus anticipate in these natural Periods, but even in matters of human and civil concern. For example: Having observed in many past
past instances how health had succeeded C. VII. to exercise, and sickness to sloth; we anticipate future health to those, who, being now sickly, use exercise; and future sickness to those, who, being now healthy, are slothful. It is a variety of such observations, all respecting one subject, which when systematized by just reasoning, and made habitual by due practice, form the character of a Master-Artist, or Man of practical Wisdom. If they respect the human body (as above) they form the Physician; if matters military, the General; if matters national, the Statesman; if matters of private life, the Moralist; and the same in other subjects. All these several characters in their respective ways may be said to possess a kind of prophetic discernment, which not only presents them the barren prospect of futurity (a prospect not hid from the meanest of men) but shews withal those events, which are likely to attend it, and thus enables them to act with superior certainty and rectitude. And hence it is, that (if we except those, who have had diviner affi...ances)
(f) Μάντις δ' ἄριστος, ὅσις εἰκαζει καλῶς.

So Milton.

Till old Experience do attain
To something like Prophetic Strain.

Et facile existimari potest, Prudentiam esse quodammodo Divinationem.


There is nothing appears so clearly an object of the Mind or Intellect only, as the Future does, since we can find no place for its existence any where else. Not but the fame, if we consider, is equally true of the Past. For tho' it may have once had another kind of being, when (according to common Phrase) it actually was, yet was it then something Present, and not something Past. As Past, it has no existence but in the Mind or Memory, since had it in fact any other, it could not properly be called Past. It was this intimate connection between Time, and the Soul, that made some Philosophers doubt, whether if there was no Soul, there could be any Time, since Time appears to have its Being in no other region. Πότερον δὲ μὴ ἔσοι ἐμφυτής ἐν ἄν οὔ χρόνος, ἀπορήσειν ἄν τις, κ. τ. λ. Natur. Aufcult. L. IV. c. 20. Themistius, who comments the above passage, expresses himself more positively. Εἰ τοῖνυν δικαίως λέγεται τότε ἄριστον τῷ τῷ ἀρισταμένῳ, τῷ μὲν τῷ ἀριστάμενον ὄνλαθν δυνάμει, τῷ δὲ ἐνεργεὶς, ταῦτα δὲ ἐν ἄν ὑποσχεῖ, μὴ ὄντος τῷ ἀριστάμενῳ...
From what has been reasoned it appears, that knowledge of the Future comes from knowledge of the Past; as does knowledge of the Past from knowledge of the Present, so that their Order to us is that of Present, Past, and Future.

Of these Species of knowledge, that of the Present is the lowest, not only as first in perception, but as far the more extensive, being necessarily common to all animal Beings, and reaching even to Zoophytes, as far as they possess Sensation. Knowledge of the Past comes next, which is superior to the former, as being confined to those animals, that have Memory as well as Senses. Knowledge of the Future comes last,
C. VII. last, as being derived from the other two, and which is for that reason the most excellent as well as the most rare, since Nature in her superadditions rises from worse always to better, and is never found to sink from better down to worse.*

And now having seen, how we acquire the knowledge of Time past, and Time future; which is first in perception, which first in dignity; which more common, which more rare; let us compare them both to the present Now or Instant, and examine what relations they maintain towards it.

In the first place there may be Times both past and future, in which the present Now has no existence, as for example in Yesterday, and To-morrow.

Again,

* See below, Note (r) of this Chapter.
Again, the present Now may so far be—C. VII. long to Time of either fort, as to be the End of the past, and the Beginning of the future; but it cannot be included within the limits of either. For if it were possible, let us suppose C the present Now included

\[
\begin{array}{c|c|c|c|c|c}
A & B & C & D & E \\
\end{array}
\]

within the limits of the past Time AD. In such case CD, part of the past Time AD, will be subsequent to C the present Now, and so of course be future. But by the Hypothesis it is past, and so will be both Past and Future at once, which is absurd. In the same manner we prove that C cannot be included within the limits of a future Time, such as BE.

What then shall we say of such Times, as this Day, this Month, this Year, this
C. VII. Century, all which include within them the present Now? They cannot be past Times or future, from what has been proved; and present Time has no existence, as has been proved likewise *. Or shall we allow them to be present, from the present Now, which exists within them; so that from the presence of that we call these also present, tho' the shortest among them has infinite parts always absent? If so, and in conformity to custom we allow such Times present, as present Days, Months, Years, and Centuries, each must of necessity be a compound of the Past and the Future, divided from each other by some present Now or Instant, and jointly called Present, while that Now remains within them. Let us suppose for example the Time XY, which

\[ f \ldots X A B C D E Y \ldots g \]

* Sup. p. 104.
let us call a Day, or a Century; and let C. VII.
the present Now or Instant exist at A.
I say, in as much as A exists within
XY, that therefore XA is Time past, and
AY Time future, and the whole
XA, AY, Time present. The same
holds, if we suppose the present Now to
exist at B, or C, or D, or E, or any
where before Y. When the present Now
exists at Y, then is the whole XY Time
past, and still more so, when the Now
gets to g, or onwards. In like manner
before the Present Now entered X, as
for example when it was at f, then was
the whole XY Time future; it was the
same, when the present Now was at
X. When it had past that, then XY
became Time present. And thus it is that
Time is present, while passing, in its
present Now or Instant. It is the
same indeed here, as it is in Space. A
Sphere passing over a Plane, and being
for that reason present to it, is only pre-
sent to that Plane in a single Point at once,
while
C. VII. while during the whole progression its parts absent are infinite (g).

From what has been said, we may perceive that all time, of every deno-

(g) Place, according to the antients, was either mediate, or immediate. I am (for example) in Europe, because I am in England; in England, because in Wiltshire; in Wiltshire, because in Salisbury; in Salisbury, because in my own house; in my own house, because in my study. Thus far Mediate Place. And what is my immediate place? It is the internal bound of that containing body (whatever it be) which co-incides with the external bound of my own Body. Τὸ πείγεχον-νος σῶμα, καθ' ὃ πείγεχε τὸ πείγεχόμενον. Now as this immediate Place is included within the limits of all the former Places, it is from this relation that those mediate Places also are called each of them my Place, tho' the least among them so far exceed my magnitude. To apply this to time. The present Century is present in the present Year; that, in the present Month; that, in the present Day; that, in the present Hour; that, in the present Minute. It is thus by circumscription within circumscription that we arrive at that real and indivisible instant, which by being itself the very essence of the present diffuses presence throughout all
nomination, is divisible and extended. But C. VII. if so, then whenever we suppose a definite

Time, even though it be a Time present, it
must needs have a Beginning, a Middle, and an End. And so much for Time.

Now from the above doctrine of Time, we propose by way of Hypothesis the following Theorie of Tenses.

The Tenses are used to mark Present, Past, and Future Time, either indefinitely
without reference to any Beginning, Middle, or End; or else definitely, in reference to such distinctions.

If indefinitely, then have we three Tenses, an Aorist of the Present, an Aorist of the Past, and an Aorist of the Future. If definitely, then have we three Tenses to mark the Beginnings of these three Times; three, to denote their Middles; and three to denote their Ends; in all Nine.

The three first of these Tenses we call the Inceptive Present, the Inceptive Past, and the Inceptive Future. The three next, the Middle Present, the Middle Past, and the Middle Future. And the three last, the Completive Present, the Completive Past, and the Completive Future.

And thus it is, that the Tenses in their natural number appear to be twelve;
three to denote *Time absolute*, and nine to C. VII. denote it *under its respective distinctions.*

Aorist of the Present.

\[ \text{Γράφω.} \quad \text{Scribo.} \quad \text{I write.} \]

Aorist of the Past.

\[ \text{"Εγράψα.} \quad \text{Scripsi.} \quad \text{I wrote.} \]

Aorist of the Future.

\[ \text{Γράψω.} \quad \text{Scribam.} \quad \text{I shall write.} \]

Inceptive Present.

\[ \text{Μέλλω γράϕεων.} \quad \text{Scripturus sum.} \quad \text{I am going to write.} \]

Middle or extended Present.

\[ \text{Τυγχάνω γράϕων.} \quad \text{Scribo or Scribens sum.} \quad \text{I am writing.} \]

Completive Present.

\[ \text{Γέγραψα.} \quad \text{Scripsi.} \quad \text{I have written.} \]

Inceptive Past.

\[ \text{"Εμελλον γράϕεων.} \quad \text{Scripturus eram.} \quad \text{I was beginning to write.} \]

Middle
C. VII.

Middle or extended Past.

"Εγραφων ουτ ιτυγχανον γράφων. Scribebam.
I was writing.

Compleitive Past.

"Εγέγραφειν. Scripseream. I had done writing.

Inceptive Future.

Μελλησον γράφειν. Scripturus ero. I shall be beginning to write.

Middle or extended Future.

"Εσομαι γράφων. Scribens ero. I shall be writing.

Compleitive Future.

"Εσομαι γεγραφώς. Scripsero. I shall have done writing.

It is not to be expected that the above Hypothesis should be justified through all instances in every language. It fares with Tenses,
Tenses, as with other affections of speech; C. VII. be the Language upon the whole ever so perfect, much must be left, in defiance of all analogy, to the harsh laws of mere authority and chance.

It may not however be improper to inquire, what traces may be discovered in favour of this system, either in languages themselves, or in those authors who have written upon this part of Grammar, or lastly in the nature and reason of things.

In the first place, as to Aorists. Aorists are usually by Grammarians referred to the Past; such are ἔλθεν, I went; ἔπεσον, I fell, &c. We seldom hear of them in the Future, and more rarely still in the Present. Yet it seems agreeable to reason, that wherever Time is signified without any further circumscription, than that of Simple present, past, or future, the Tense is an Aorist.

Thus
C. VII. Thus Milton,

Millions of spiritual creatures walk the earth
Unseen, both when we wake, and when we sleep. P. L. IV. 277.

Here the verb (walk) means not that they were walking at that instant only, when Adam spoke, but ὥς ὁσίως indefinitely, take any instant whatever. So when the same author calls Hypocrisy,

—the only Evil, that walks Invisible, except to God alone,

the Verb (walks) hath the like aoristical or indefinite application. The same may be said in general of all Sentences of the Gnomologic kind, such as

Ad pœnitendum properat, cito qui judicat.
Avarus, nisi cum moritur, nil recte facit, &c.
All these Tenses are so many Aorists C. VII.
of the present.

Gnomologic Sentences after the same
manner make likewise Aorists of the
Future.

Tu nihil admittes in te, formidine
pœnae.

Hor.

Sotœo Legislative Sentences, Thou shalt
not kill, Thou shalt not steal, &c. for this
means no one particular future Time, but
is a prohibition extended indefinitely to
every part of Time future (h).

We

(b) The Latin Tongue appears to be more than or-
dinarily deficient, as to the article of Aorists. It has no
peculiar Form even for an Aorist of the Past, and there-
fore (as Priscian tells us) the Præteritum is forced to do
the double duty both of that Aorist, and of the perfect
Present, its application in particular instances being to
be
C. VII. We pass from Aorists, to the inceptive tenses.

These may be found in part supplied (like many other Tenses) by verbs auxiliary. MEOLAO γράφων. Scripturus sum. I am going to write. But the Latins go farther, and have a species of Verbs, derived from others, which do the duty of these Tenses, and are themselves for that reason called Inchoatives or Inceptives. Thus from Caleo, I am warm, comes Calesco, I begin to grow warm; from Tumeo, I dwell, comes Tunesco, I begin to dwell. These Inchoative Verbs are so peculiarly appropriated to the Beginnings of Time, that they are defective as to all Tenses, which denote it in its Completion, and there-

be gathered from the Context. Thus it is that FECI means (as the same author informs us) both τετωνικα and επεινομαι, I have done it, and I did it; VIDI both ειδον and ειδο, I have just seen it, and I saw it once. Prisc. Gram. L. VIII. p. 814, 838. Edit. Putsch.
therefore have neither *Perfectum, Plus C. VII.*
quam-perfectum, or *Perfect Future*. There
is likewise a species of Verbs called in Greek
'Επετικά, in Latin *Desiderativa*, the *Desi-
deratives* or *Meditatives*, which if they are
not strictly *Inceptive*, yet both in Greek
and Latin have a near affinity with them.
Such are πολεμησεῖος, *Bellaturio, I have a
desire to make war; βρωσεῖος, *Esurio, I
long to eat* (i). And so much for the
*Inceptive Tenses.*

The two last orders of Tenses which re-
main, are those we called (k) the *Middle
Tenses* (which express Time as extended
and

(i) As all *Beginnings* have reference to what is *fu-
ture*, hence we see how properly these Verbs are formed,
the *Greek* ones from a future Verb, the *Latin* from a
future Participle. From πολεμήσω and βρῶσω come
πολεμησεῖος and βρωσεῖος; from *Bellaturus* and *Esurus*
come *Bellaturio* and *Esurio*. See *Macrobius*, p. 691.
Ed. Var. ἐ τῶν γι με νῦν δή ΤΕΛΑΣΕΙΟΝΤΑ
ἐποίησες γελάσαι. Plato in Phæd. done.

(k) Care must be taken not to confound these *middle*
Tenses, with the Tenses of those Verbs, which bear
the same name among *Grammarians.*
and the Perfect or Complete, which express its Completion or End.

Now for these the authorities are many. They have been acknowledged already in the ingenious Accident of Mr. Hoadly, and explained and confirmed by Dr. Samuel Clarke, in his rational edition of Homer’s Illiad. Nay, long before either of these, we find the same scheme in Scaliger, and by him (1) ascribed to † Grocinus, as its author. The learned Gaza (who


† His Name was William Grocin, an Englishman, contemporary with Erasmus, and celebrated for his learning. He went to Florence to study under Landin, and was Professor at Oxford. Spec. Lit. Flor. p. 205.
Book the First.

(who was himself a Greek, and one of the C. VII. ablest restorers of that language in the western world) characterizes the Tenses in nearly the same manner (m). What Apollonius hints, is exactly consonant (n).

Priscian

(m) The Present Tense (as this Author informs us in his excellent Grammar) denotes το ἐνεςωμένον κατελεί, that which is now instant and incomplete; THE Perfectum, τὸ παρακληθοῦσα ἄρτι, κατελεί τῇ ἑνεσίωτος, that which is now immediately past, and is the Completion of the Present; THE Imperfectum, τὸ παρακληθεὶν κατελεί τῷ παρακληθέντι, the extended and incomplete part of the Past; and THE Plusquamperfectum, τὸ παρακληθοῦσα πάλαι, κατελεί τῷ παρακληθέντι, that which is past long ago, and is the completion of the präteritum. Gram. L. IV.

(n) Ἔντοθεν δὲ πειθόμεθα, ὅτι ἐν παρακληθέντι συντελεῖαν οἰμαίνει τῷ παρακληθεὶν, τῷ γε μὴν ἑνεσίωτον—Hence we are persuaded that the Perfectum doth not signify the completion of the Past, but present completion. Apollon. L. III. c. 6. The Reason, which persuaded him to this opinion, was the application and use of the Particle ἂν, of which he was then treating, and which, as it denoted Potentiality or Contingence, would afford (he says) with any of the passing, extended, and incomplete Tenses, but never with this Perfectum, because this implied such a complete and indefeasible existence, as never to be qualified into the nature of a Contingent.
C. VII. Priscian too advances the same doctrine from the Stoics, whose authority we esteem greater than all the rest, not only from the more early age when they lived, but from their superior skill in Philosophy, and their peculiar attachment to Dialectic, which naturally led them to great accuracy in these Grammatical Speculations (o).

Before

(o) By these Philosophers the vulgar present Tense was called the Imperfect Present, and the vulgar Præteritum, the Perfect Present, than which nothing can be more consonant to the system that we favour. But let us hear Priscian, from whom we learn these facts. Præsens tempus proprie dicitur, cujus pars jam præteriit, pars futura est. Cum enim Tempus, fluuii more, instabili volvatur cursu, vix pœnûm habere potest in præsentia, hoc est, in instante. Maxima igitur pars ejus (sicut dicitum est) vel præteriit vel futura est.—Unde Stoici jure hoc tempus præsens etiam Imperfectum vocabant (ut dicitum est) eo quod prior ejus pars, quœ præteriit, transacta est, deest autem sequens, id est, futura. Ut si in medio versu dicam, scribo verfum, prior ejus parte scripta; cui adhuc deest extrema pars, præsenti utor verbo, dicendo, scribo verfum: sed Imperfectum est, quod deest adhuc versus, quod scribatur—Ex eodem igitur Præsenti nascitur etiam Perfectum. Si enim in fine pœnœniat inceptum, statim utimur Præterito Perfecto; continuo enim, scripto ad finem versu, dico, scripti verfum.—And soon after speaking of the Latin
Before we conclude, we shall add a few miscellaneous observations, which will be more easily intelligible from the hypothesis here advanced, and serve withal to confirm its truth.

And first the Latins used their Præteritum Perfectum in some instances after a very peculiar manner; so as to imply the very reverse of the verb in its natural signification. Thus, Vixit, signified, is dead; Fuit, signified, now is not, is no more. It was in this sense that Cicero addressed the People of Rome, when he had put to death the leaders in the Catalinarian Conspiracy. He appeared in the Forum Perseus, he says—sciendum tamen, quod Romani Præterito Perfecto non solum in re modo conpletâ utuntur, (in quo vim habet ejus, qui apud Graecos χαρακτεριστειν vocatur, quem Stoici Teleion Enèa- ΤΩΤΑ nominaverunt) sed etiam pro 'Agis' accipitur, &c. Lib. VIII. p. 812, 813, 814.
C. VII. Forum, and cried out with a loud voice, *Vixerunt. So Virgil,

--- || Fuimus Troes, fuit Ilium & ingens

Gloria Dardanidum--- Æn. II.

And

* So among the Romans, when in a Cause all the Pleaders had spoken, the Cryer used to proclaim Dix-

erunt, i.e. *they have done speaking.* Ascon. Pæd. in Verr. II.

|| So Tibullus speaking of certain Prodigies and evil Omens.

Hæc fuerint olim. Sed tu, jam mitis, Apollo,
Prodigia indomitis merge sub æquoribus.

Eleg. II. 5. ver. 19.

Let these Events have been in days of old;—by Im-

plication therefore—But henceforth let them be no more.

So Eneas in Virgil prays to Phæbus.

Hac Trojana tenus suerit fortuna secuta.

Let Trojan Fortune (that is, adverse, like that of Troy,
and its inhabitants,) *have so far followed us.* By implica-
tion therefore, but let it follow us no farther,

Here let it end, Hic sit Finis, as Servius well observes
in the place.

In which instances, by the way, mark not only the force of the Tense, but of the Mood, the Precative or Imperative, not in the Future but in the Past. See p. 154, 155, 156.
And again,

—Locus Ardea quondam
Dicitus avis, & nunc magnum manet
Ardea nomen,

* Sed fortuna fuit—Æn. VII.

The reason of these significations is derived from the compleitive Power of the Tense here mentioned. We see that the periods of Nature, and of human affairs are maintained by the reciprocal succession of Contraries. It is thus with Calm and Tempest; with Day and Night; with Prosperity and Adversity; with Glory and Ignominy; with Life and Death. Hence then, in the instances above, the completion of one contrary is put for the commencement of the other, and to say, HATH LIVED, OR, HATH BEEN, has the same meaning with, IS DEAD, OR, IS NO MORE.

K 3

* Certus in hospitibus non est amor; errat, ut ipsi:
Cumque nihil speres firminus esse, fuit.
Sive erimus, seu nos Fata fuisse volent.
Tibull. III. 5. 32.
C. VII. It is remarkable in *Virgil, that he frequently joins in the same sentence this complete and perfect Present with the extended and passing Present; which proves that he considered the two, as belonging to the same species of Time, and therefore naturally formed to co-incide with each other.

—Tibi jam brachia contrahit ardens
Scorpios, & cæli justâ plus parte reliquit.
G. I.

Terra tremit; fugere fera— G. I.

Præsertim si tempestatas a vertice sylvis.
Incubuit, glomeratque fere incendia ventus.
G. II.

—illa noto citius, volucrique sagittâ,
Ad terram fugit, & portu se condidit alto.
Æn. V.

* See also Spencer's Fairy Queen, B. I. C. 3. St. 19.

He hath his Shield redeem'd, and forth his Sword he draws.
In the same manner he joins the same C. VII. two modifications of Time in the Past, that is to say, the complete and perfect Past with the extended and passing.

—Inruerant Danai, & teētum omne tenebant. Aēn. II.

Tris imbris torti radios, tris nubis aquosae
Addiderant, rutili tris ignis, & alitis austri.
Fulgores nunc terrificos, sonitumque metumque
Miscebant operi,flammisque sequacibus iras (p). Aēn. VIII.

As

(p) The Intention of Virgil may be better seen, in rendering one or two of the above passages into English.

—Tibi jam brachia contrahit ardens
Scorpios, & caeli justæ plus parte reliquit.

For thee the scorpion is now contracting his claws, and hath already left thee more than a just portion of Heaven. The Poet, from a high strain of poetic adulation, supposes the scorpion so desirous of admitting Augustus among the heavenly signs, that though he has already made him more than room enough, yet he still...
C. VII. It is remarkable in *Virgil, that he frequently joins in the same sentence this complete and perfect Present with the extended and passing Present; which proves that he considered the two, as belonging to the same species of Time, and therefore naturally formed to co-incide with each other.

——Tibi jam brachia contrahit ardens Scorpios, & cali justa plus parte reliquit.  
G. I.

Terra tremit; fugere ferae—— G. I.

Præsertim si tempestas a vertice sylvis. Incubuit, glomeratque serens incendia ventus.  
G. II.

——illa noto citius, volucrique sagittâ, Ad terram fugit, & portu se condidit alto.  
Æn. V.

* See also Spencer’s Fairy Queen, B. I. C. 3. St. 19.  

He hath his Shield redeem’d, and forth his Sword he draws.
In the same manner he joins the same C. VII.
two modifications of *Time in the Past*, that is to say, the complete and perfect Past with the extended and passing.

—Inruerant Danai, & teetum omne tenebant.  
*Æn. II.*

Tris imbris torti radios, tris nubis aquosae  
Addiderant, rutuli tris ignis, & alitis ausiri.  
Fulgores nunc terrifcos, sonitumque metumque  
Miscebant operi, flammisque sequacibus iras (*p*).  
*Æn. VIII.*

As

(*p*) The Intention of Virgil may be better seen, in rendering one or two of the above passages into English.

—Tibi jam brachia contrahit ardens  
Scorpios, & caeli jujla plus parte reliquit.

*For thee the scorpion is now contracting his claws,  
and hath already left thee more than a just portion of Heaven.* The Poet, from a high strain of poetic adulation, supposes the scorpion fondefrous of admitting Augustus among the heavenly signs, that though he has already made him more than room enough, yet he still...
C. VII. As to the Imperfectum, it is sometimes employed to denote what is usual and customary. Thus surgebat and scrib- 
bat signify not only, he was rising, he was writing, but upon occasion they signify, he used to rise, he used to write. 
The reason of this is, that whatever is customary, must be something which has been frequently repeated. But what has been frequently repeated, must needs require an Extension of Time past, and thus we fall insensibly into the Tense here mentioned. 

Again,

continues to be making him more. Here then we have two acts, one perfect, the other pending, and hence the use of the two different Tenses. Some editions read reliquit; but relinquuit has the authority of the celebrated Medicean manuscript.

—IIla noto citius, volucrique sagittâ, 
Ad terram fugit, & portu se condidit alto.

The ship, quicker than the wind, or a swift arrow, con- 
tinues flying to land, and is hid within the lofty harbour. We may suppose this Harbour, (like many others) to have been surrounded with high Land. Hence the Vessel, immediately on entering it, was comple- tely hid from those spectators, who had gone out to see
Again, we are told by Pliny (whose C. VII. authority likewise is confirmed by many gems and marbles still extant) that the ancient painters and sculptors, when they fixed their names to their works, did it pendentí titulo, in a suspensive kind of Inscription, and employed for that purpose the Tense here mentioned. It was Ἀττελλανής ἐποίει, Ἀπελλης ἐποίει, Πολυκέλης ἐποίει, Polycletus faciebat, and never ἐποίησε or fecit. By this they imagined that they avoided the shew of arrogance, and had in case of censure an apology (as it were) prepared, since it appeared from the work itself, that it was once indeed in hand, but no pretension that it was ever finished (q).

It

fee the Ship-race, but yet might still continue sailing towards the shore within.

—Inuerant Danai, & tēiûm omne tenebant.

The Greeks had entered, and were then possessing the whole House; as much as to say, they had entered, and that was over, but their possession continued still. (q) Plin. Nat. Hjfl. L. I. The first Printers (who were most of them Scholars and Critics) in imitation of the
C. VII. It is remarkable that the very manner, in which the Latins derive these tenses from one another, shews a plain reference to the system here advanced. From the passing Present come the passing Past, and Future. Scribo, Scribebam, Scribam. From the perfect Present come the perfect Past, and Future. Scripsi, Scripsieram, Scripsiero. And so in all instances, even where the verbs are irregular, as from Fero come Ferebam and Feram; from Tuli come Tuleram and Tulero.

We shall conclude by observing, that the Order of the Tenses, as they stand ranged by the old Grammarians, is not a fortuitous Order, but is consonant to our perceptions, in the recognition of Time, according to what we have explained already

the antient Artifics used the same Tense. Excudebat H. Stephanus. Excudebat Guil. Morelius. Absolvebat Joan. Benenatus, which has been followed by Dr. Taylor in his late valuable edition of Demosthenes.
Book the First.

ready (r). Hence it is, that the Present C. VII. Tense stands first; then the Past Tenses; and lastly the Future.

And now, having seen what authorities there are for Aorists, or those Tenses, which denote Time indefinitely; and what for those Tenses, opposed to Aorists, which mark it definitely, (such as the Inceptive, the Middle, and the Completive) we here finish the subject of Time and Tenses, and proceed to consider the Verb in other Attributes, which it will be necessary to deduce from other principles.

(r) See before p. 109, 110, 111, 112, 113. Scaliger's observation upon this occasion is elegant.—Ordo autem (Temporum scil.) alter est, quam natura eorum. Quod enim praeterit, prius est, quam quod est, itaque primo loco debere poni videbatur. Verum, quod primo quoque tempore offertur nobis, id creat primas species in animo: quamobrem Praesens Tempus primum locum occupavit; est enim commune omnibus animalibus. Praeteritum autem ii tantum, quae memoriae praeditae sunt. Futurum vero etiam paucioribus, quippe quibus datum est prudentia officium. De Cauf. Ling. Lat. c. 113. See also Senecae Epist. 124. Mutum animal sensu comprehendit praesentia; praeteritorum, &c.
C H A P. VIII.

Concerning Modes.

C.VIII. WE have observed already (a) that the Soul's leading powers are those of Perception and those of Volition, which words we have taken in their most comprehensive acceptation. We have observed also, that all Speech or Discourse is a publishing or exhibiting some part of our soul, either a certain Perception, or a certain Volition. Hence then, according as we exhibit it either in a different part, or after a different manner, hence I say the variety of Modes or Moods (b).

(a) See Chapter II.
(b) Gaza defines a Mode exactly consonant to this doctrine. He says it is—βλέπω, ἵνα ἐνάθημα ἡχῷ; ἐν θεῶς σημανόμενον—a Volition or Affection of the Soul, signified through some Voice, or Sound articulate. Gram. I. IV. As therefore this is the nature of Modes, and Modes belong to Verbs, hence it is Apollonius...
If we simply declare, or indicate some-thing to be, or not to be, (whether a Per-
ception or Volition, it is equally the same) this constitutes that Mode called the De-
clarative or Indicative.

A Perception.
—Nosco crinis, incanaque menta
Regis Romani——Virg. Æn. VI.

A Volition.
In nova fert animus mutatas dicere formas
Corpora——Ovid. Metam. I.

If we do not strictly assert, as of some-
thing absolute and certain, but as of some-
thing possible only, and in the number of
Con-

nium observes—τοῖς ρήμασιν ἔξωρίτως ἀπάντεται ἐν συ-
γχωρί διάβητοι—the Soul's disposition is in an eminent de-
gree attached to Verbs. De Synt. I. III. c. 13. Thus too Prisian: Modi sunt diversae inclinationes
Animi, quas varia consequitur declinatio Verbi.
L. VIII. p. 821.
C.VIII. Contingents, this makes that Mode, which Grammarians call the Potential; and which becomes on such occasions the leading Mode of the sentence.

_Sed tacitus pasci si posset Corvus, haberet_  
_Plus dapis, &c._

_Hor._

Yet sometimes it is not the leading Mode, but only subjoined to the Indicative. In such case, it is mostly used to denote the End, or final Cause; which End, as in human Life it is always a Contingent, and may never perhaps happen in despite of all our foresight, is therefore express most naturally by the Mode here mentioned. For example,

_Ut jugulent homines, surgunt de nostre latrones._

_Hor._

_Thieves rise by night, that they may cut mens throats._

_Here_
Here that they rise, is positively asserted C. VIII. in the Declarative or Indicative Mode; but as to their cutting mens throats, this is only delivered potentially, because how truly ever it may be the End of their rising, it is still but a Contingent, that may never perhaps happen. This Mode, as often as it is in this manner subjoined, is called by Grammarians not the Potential, but the Subjunctive.

But it so happens, in the constitution of human affairs, that it is not always sufficient merely to declare ourselves to others. We find it often expedient, from a consciousness of our inability, to address them after a manner more interesting to ourselves, whether to have some Perception informed, or some Volition gratified. Hence then new Modes of speaking; if we interrogate, it is the Interrogative Mode; if we require, it is the Requisitive. Even the Requisitive itself hath its subordinae Species: With respect to inferiors, it is an Imperative Mode; with respect to equals
C.VIII. equals and superiors, it is a Precative or Optative *.

And thus have we established a variety of Modes; the Indicative or Declarative, to assert what we think certain; the Potential, for the Purposes of whatever we think Contingent; the Interrogative, when we are doubtful, to procure us Information; and the Requisitive, to assist us in the gratification of our Volitions. The Requisitive too appears under two distinct Species, either as it is Imperative to inferiors, or Precative to superiors (c).

* It was the confounding of this Distinction, that gave rise to a Sophism of Protagoras. Homer (says he) in beginning his Iliad with—Sing, Mufe, the Wrath,—when he thinks to pray, in reality commands. ἤκτε-σθαι εἴδομεν, ἐπιτάξει. Aristot. Poet. c. 19. The Solution is evident from the Division here established, the Grammatical Form being in both cases the same.

(c) The Species of Modes in great measure depend on the Species of Sentences. The Stoics increased the number of Sentences far beyond the Peripatetics. Besides those mentioned in Chapter II. Note (b) they had many
As therefore all these several Modes C.VIII. have their foundation in nature, so have certain

many more, as may be seen in Ammonius de Interpret. p. 4. and Diogenes Laeritus, L. VII. 66. The Peripatetics (and it seems too with reason) considered all these additional Sentences as included within those, which they themselves acknowledged, and which they made to be five in number, the Vocative, the Imperative, the Interrogative, the Precautive, and the Affertive. There is no mention of a Potential Sentence, which may be supposed to co-incide with the Affertive, or Indicative. The Vocative (which the Peripatetics called the ἐνδος κλητικὸν, but the Stoics more properly ἠθοποιοτικὸν) was nothing more than the Form of address in point of names, titles, and epithets, with which we apply ourselves one to another. As therefore it seldom included any Verb within it, it could hardly contribute to form a verbal Mode. Ammonius and Boethius, the one a Greek Peripatetic, the other a Latin, have illustrated the Species of Sentences from Homer and Virgil, after the following manner.

Ἀλλὰ τι λόγῳ κεῖτε ἐνδώ, τῷ τε ΚΛΗΤΙΚΟΤ, ὡς τὸ Ομικρὸν ἀγαθῶν —

Ἀν χαίρετο προστακτικὸν, ὡς τὸ

Βάσιος ὅδε, ἢ ἴσι ταξεῖα —
certain marks or signs or them been introduced into languages, that we may be enabled

Boethius's Account is as follows. *Perfectorum verorum Orationum partes quinque sunt:* **Deprecativa, ut,**

"Jupiter omnipotens, precibus si fleeceris ullis,
Da deinde auxilium, Pater, atque hae omena firma."

**Imperativa, ut,**

"Vade age, Nate, voca Zephyros, &c, labere pennis."

**Interrogativa, ut,**

"Die mihi, Damasta, cujum pecus?—"

**Vocativa, ut,**

"O! Pater, O! hominum rerumque aeterna potestas."

**Enuntiativa, in qua Veritas vel Falsitas invenitur, ut,**

"Principio arboribus varia est natura creandis."

enabled by our discourse to signify them, C.VIII:
one to another. And hence those various
Modes or Moods, of which we find in
common Grammars so prolix a detail, and
which are in fact no more than "so many
"literal Forms, intended to express these
"natural Distinctions" (d).

ALL

In Milton the same Sentences may be found, as fol-
lows. The Precative,
—Universal Lord! be bounteous still
To give us only Good——

The Imperative,
Go then, Thou mightiest, in thy Father's might.

The Interrogative,
Whence, and what art thou, execrable Shape?

The Vocative,
—Adam, earth's ballow'd Mold,
Of God inspir'd——

The Assertive or Enuntiative,
The conquer'd also and enflav'd by war
Shall, with their freedom lost, all virtue lose.

(d) The Greek Language, which is of all the most
elegant and complete, expresses these several Modes,
and all distinctions of Time likewise, by an adequate number of Variations in each particular Verb. These Variations may be found, some at the beginning of the Verb, others at its ending, and consist for the most part either in *multiplying* or *diminishing* the number of Syllables, or else in *lengthening* or *shortening* their respective Quantities, which two methods are called by Grammarians the *Syllabic* and the *Temporal*. The Latin, which is but a Species of Greek somewhat debased, admits in like manner a large portion of those Variations, which are chiefly to be found at the Ending of its Verbs, and but rarely at their Beginning. Yet in its Depo-
ments and Passives it is so far defective, as to be forced to have recourse to the *Auxiliar, sum*. The modern Lan-
guages, which have still fewer of those Variations, have been necessitated all of them to assume two Auxiliars at least, that is to say, those which express in each Lan-
guage the Verbs, *Have*, and *Am*. As to the *English* Tongue, it is so poor in this respect, as to admit no Variation for Modes, and only one for Time, which we apply to express an Aorist of the Past. Thus from *Write* cometh *Wrote*; from *Give, Gave*, from *Speak, Spake*, &c. Hence to express Time, and Modes, we are compelled to employ no less than seven Auxiliars, viz. *Do, Am, Have, Shall, Will, May*, and *Can*; which we use sometimes singly, as when we say, *I am writ-
ing,*
the Soul and its Affections. Their

Peculiarities and Distinctions are in part, as follows.

The Requisitive and Interrogative Modes are distinguished from the Indicative and Potential, that whereas these last seldom call for a Return, to the two former it is always necessary.

If we compare the Requisitive Mode with the Interrogative, we shall find these also distinguished, and that not only in the Return, but in other Peculiarities.

*Book the First.* 149

To

ing, I have written; sometimes two together, as, I have been writing, I should have written; sometimes no less than three, as I might have been lost, he could have been preserved. But for these, and all other speculations, relative to the Genius of the English Language, we refer the reader, who wishes for the most authentic information, to that excellent Treatise of the learned Dr. Lowth, intitled, *A Short Introduction to English Grammar.*
C.VIII. The Return to the Requisitive is sometimes made in Words, sometimes in Deeds. To the Request of Dido to Eneas—

— a primâ dic, hospes, origine nobis
Infidias Danâum—

the proper Return was in Words, that is, in an historical Narrative. To the Request of the unfortunate Chief—date obolum Belfario—the proper Return was in a Deed, that is, in a charitable Relief. But with respect to the Interrogative, the Return is necessarily made in Words alone, in Words, which are called a Response or Answer, and which are always actually or by implication some definitive affirmative Sentence. Take Examples. Whose Verses are these?—the Return is a Sentence—These are Verses of Homer. Was Brutus a worthy Man?—the Return is a Sentence—Brutus was a worthy Man.

And hence (if we may be permitted to digress) we may perceive the
the near affinity of this Interrogative Mode C.VIII. with the Indicative, in which last its Response or Return is mostly made. So near indeed is this Affinity, that in these two Modes alone the Verb retains the same Form (e), nor are they otherwise distinguished, than either by the Addition or Absence of some small particle, or by some minute change in the collocation of the words, or sometimes only by a change in the Tone, or Accent (f).

But

(e) "Πρε ἐν προκειμένη ὑπουργίᾳ ἀγκλήσει, τῆς ἱμαχια-μένης καταφάσει ἀποβάλλεσθαι, μεθίσατε τῇ καλεθ-θοῖ τῇ ὡς ὑπουργίᾳ—ἀναπληρωθεῖσα δὲ τῆς καταφάσεως, ὑπο-στηθεῖ εἰς τὸ εἶναι ὑπουργίᾳ. The Indicative Mode, of which we speak, by laying aside that Assertion, which by its nature it implies, quits the name of Indicative—when it reassumes the Assertion, it returns again to its proper Character. Apoll. de Synt. L. III. c. 21. Theodore Gaza says the same, Introd. Gram. L. IV.

(f) It may be observed of the Interrogative, that as often as the Interrogation is simple and definite, the Response may be made in almost the same Words, by
C.VIII. But to return to our comparison between the Interrogative Mode and the Requisite.

by converting them into a sentence affirmative or negative, according as the Truth is either one or the other. For example—Are these Verses of Homer?—Response—These Verses are of Homer. Are those Verses of Virgil?—Response—Those are not Verses of Virgil. And here the Artists of Language, for the sake of brevity and dispatch, have provided two Particles, to represent all such Responses, Yes, for all the affirmative; No, for all the negative.

But when the Interrogation is complex, as when we say—Are these Verses of Homer, or of Virgil?—much more, when it is indefinite, as when we say in general—Whose are these Verses?—we cannot then respond after the manner above mentioned. The Reason is, that no Interrogation can be answered by a simple Yes, or a simple No, except only those, which are themselves so simple, as of two possible answers to admit only one. Now the least complex Interrogation will admit of four Answers, two affirmative, two negative, if not perhaps of more. The reason is, a complex Interrogation cannot consist of less than two simple ones; each of which may be separately affirmed and separately denied. For instance
The Interrogative (in the language of Grammarians) has all Persons—

instance—Are these Verses Homer's, or Virgil's? (1.) They are Homer's—(2.) They are not Homer's—(3.) They are Virgil's—(4.) They are not Virgil's—we may add, (5.) They are of neither. The indefinite Interrogations go still farther; for these may be answered by infinite affirmatives, and infinite negatives. For instance—Whose are these Verses? We may answer affirmatively—They are Virgil's, They are Horace's, They are Ovid's, &c.—or negatively—They are not Virgil's, They are not Horace's, They are not Ovid's, and so on, either way to infinity. How then should we learn from a single Yes, or a single No, which particular is meant among infinite Possibles? These therefore are Interrogations which must be always answered by a Sentence. Yet even here Custom has consulted for Brevity, by returning for Answer only the single essential characteristic Word, and retrenching by an Ellipsis all the rest, which rest the Interrogator is left to supply from himself. Thus when we are asked—How many right angles equal the angles of a triangle?—we answer in the short monosyllable, Two; whereas, without the Ellipsis, the answer would have been—Two right angles equal the angles of a triangle.
of both Numbers. The Requisitive or Imperative has no first Person of the singular, and that from this plain reason, that it is equally absurd in Modes for a person to request or give commands to himself, as it is in Pronouns, for the speaker to become the subject of his own address*.

Again, we may interrogate as to all Times, both Present, Past, and Future. Who was Founder of Rome? Who is King of China? Who will discover the Longitude?—But Intreating and Commanding (which are the essence of the Re-

The Antients distinguished these two Species of Interrogation by different names. The simple they called 'Ερώτημα, Interrogatio; the complex, αίσθημα, Personatatio. Ammonius calls the first of these 'Ερώτημα διάλεξις; the other, 'Ερώτημα ἀναθεματική. See Am. in Lib. de Interpr. p. 160. Diog. Laert. VII. 66. Quintil. Inst. IX. 2.

* Sup. p. 74, 75.
Requisitive Mode) have a necessary re-pect to the Future (g) only. For indeed—

(g) Apollonius’s Account of the Future, implied in all Imperatives, is worth observing. 'Επὶ γὰρ μὴ γι-νομένοις καὶ μὴ γενούσοις η ΓΡΟΣΤΑΞΙΣ. τὰ δὲ μὴ γενόμενα καὶ μὴ γενότα, εἰπτηδεῖοτητα ἃ ἔχουσε εἰς τὸ ἔσεσθαι, ΜΕΛΛΟΝΤΟΣ ἐσι. A COMMAND has respect to those things which either are not doing, or have not yet been done. But these things, which being not now doing, or having not yet been done, have a natural aptitude to exist hereafter, may be properly said to apper-tain to the FUTURE. De Syntaxi, L. I. c. 35. Soon before this he says—'Απαντα τὰ προσαχικὰ ἑκείμενον ἔχει τὴν τῇ μιᾶς διάθεσιν—χρῆσθαι γὰρ ἐν ὑσῳ ἐστὶν ἔτοι, ὁ ΤΥΡΑΝΝΟΚΤΟΝΗΣΑΣ ΤΙΜΑΣΘΩΝ, τῇ, ΤΙΜΗΘΕΣΕΤΑΙ, κατὰ τὴν χρόνων ἐννοιαν τῇ ἑκκλησι διηλαξομεν, καθ’ ὅ τοῦ μὲν προσαχικον, τὸ ἐς ὅπερικον. All IMPERATIVES have a disposition within them, which respects the FUTURE—with regard there-fore to TIME, it is the same thing to say, LET HIM, that KILLS a TYRANT, be HONOURED, or, he, that KILLS one, SHALL BE HONOURED; the dif-fe-rence being only in the Mode, in as much as one is IM-PERATIVE, the other INDICATIVE or Declarative. Apoll. de Syntaksi, L. I. c. 35. Prisian seems to al-low Imperatives a share of Present Time, as well as Future. But if we attend, we shall find his Present to be
C. VIII. what have they to do with the present or the past, the natures of which are immutable and necessary?

It be nothing else than an immediate Future, as opposed to a more distant one. Imperativus vero Præsens & Futurum [Tempus] naturali quâdam necessitate videtur posse accipere. Ea eterum imperamus, que vel in presenti statim volumus fieri sine aliqua dilatatione, vel in futuro. Lib. VIII. p. 806.

It is true the Greeks in their Imperatives admit certain Tenses of the Past, such as those of the Perfectum, and of the two Aorists. But then these Tenses, when so applied, either totally lose their temporary Character, or else are used to infinuate such a Speed of execution, that the deed should be (as it were) done, in the very instant when commanded. The same difference seems to subsist between our English Imperative, Be gone, and those others of, Go, or Be going. The first (if we please) may be styled the Imperative of the Perfectum, as calling in the very instant for the completion of our Commands; the others may be styled Imperatives of the Future, as allowing a reasonable time to begin first, and finish afterward.

It is thus Apollonius, in the Chapter first cited, distinguishes between σκαρπεῖτω τὸς ὁμπέλους, Go to digging the Vines, and σκαρπύτω τὸς ὁμπέλους, Get the Vines dug.
It is from this connection of Futurity C.VIII. with Commands, that the Future Indicative is sometimes used for the Imperative, and that to say to any one, You shall do this, has often the same force with the Imperative, Do this. So in the Decalogue—Thou shalt not kill—Thou shalt not bear false witness.

... The first is spoken (as he calls it) εἰς παράτασιν, by way of Extension, or allowance of Time for the work; the second, εἰς τετελείωσιν, with a view to immediate Completion. And in another place, explaining the difference between the same Tenses, Συνάπτει and Συνάψον, he says of the last, ὁ μὲν οὖν τὸ μὴ γινόμενον προτέρους, ἄλλα καὶ τὸ γινόμενον εἰ παράτασιν ἀπαγορεύει, that it not only commands something, which has not been yet done, but forbids also that, which is now doing in an Extension, that is to say, in a slow and lengthened progress. Hence, if a man has been a long while writing, and we are willing to hasten him, it would be wrong to say in Greek, ΓΡΑΦΕ, Write (for that he is now, and has been long doing) but ΓΡΑΨΟΝ, Get your writing done; make no delays. See Apoll. L. III. c. 24. See also Macrobius de Diff. Verb. Græc. & Lat. p. 680. Edit. Parior. Latini non eslimaverunt, &c.
As to the Potential Mode, it is distinguished from all the rest, by its subordinate or subjunctive Nature. It is also farther distinguished from the Requisitive and Interrogative, by implying a kind of feeble and weak Assertion, and so becoming in some degree susceptible of Truth and Fallacy. Thus, if it be said potentially, This may be, or, This might have been, we may remark without absurdity, It is true, or It is false. But if it be said, Do this, meaning, Fly to Heaven, or, Can this be done? meaning, to square the Circle, we cannot say in either case, it is true or it is false, though the Command and the Question are about things impossible. Yet still the Potential does not aspire to the Indicative, because it implies but a dubious and conjectural Assertion,
Book the First.

Assertion, whereas that of the Indicative C.VIII. is absolute, and without reserve.

This therefore (the Indicative I mean) is the Mode, which, as in all Grammars it is the first in order, so is truly first both in dignity and use. It is this, which publishes our sublimest perceptions; which exhibits the Soul in her purest Energies, superior to the Imperfection of desires and wants; which includes the whole of Time, and its minutest distinctions; which, in its various Past Tenses, is employed by History, to preserve to us the Remembrance of former Events; in its Futures is used by Prophecy, or (in default of this) by wise Foresight, to instruct and forewarn us, as to that which is coming; but above all in its Present Tense serves Philosophy and the Sciences, by just Demonstrations to establish necessary Truth; that Truth, which from its nature only ex-
C.VIII. *is in the Present*; which knows no distinctions either of Past or of Future, but is everywhere and always invariably one (*h*).

**Through**

(*b*) See the quotation, Note (*c*), Chapter the Sixth. *Cum enim dicimus, Deus est, non eum dicimus nunc esse, sed, &c.*

*Boethius*, author of the sentiment there quoted, was by birth a *Roman* of the first quality; by religion, a Christian; and by philosophy, a Platonic and Peripatetic; which two Sects, as they sprang from the same Source, were in the latter ages of antiquity commonly adopted by the same Persons, such as *Themistius*, *Porphyry*, *Iamblichus*, *Ammonius*, and others. There were no Sects of Philosophy, that lay greater Stress on the distinction between things existing *in Time* and *not in Time*, than the two above-mentioned. The Doctrine of the Peripatetics on this Subject (since it is these that *Boethius* here follows) may be partly understood from the following Sketch.

"The things, that exist in *Time*, are those whose *Existence Time can measure*. But if their Existence may be measured by Time, then there may be assumed a Time greater than the Existence of any one of them, as there may be assumed a number greater than the greatest multitude, that is capable..."
Through all the above Modes, with C.VIII.
their respective Tenses, the Verb being

"capable of being numbered. And hence it is that
"things temporary have their Existence, as it were li-
"mited by Time; that they are confined within it, as
"within some bound; and that in some degree or other
"they all submit to its power, according to those com-
"mon Phrases, that Time is a destroyer; that things
"decay through Time; that men forget in Time, and lose
"their abilities, and seldom that they improve, or grow
"young, or beautiful. The truth indeed is, Time al-
"ways attends Motion. Now the natural effect of Mo-
"tion is to put something, which now is, out of that
"state, in which it now is, and so far therefore to de-
"stroy that state.

"The reverse of all this holds with things that
"exist eternally. These exist not in Time, be-
"cause Time is so far from being able to measure their
"Existence, that no Time can be assumed, which their
"Existence doth not surpass. To which we may add,
"that they feel none of its effects, being no way ob.
"noxious either to damage or dissolution.

"To instance in examples of either kind of Being.
"There are such things at this instant, as Stonehenge
"and the Pyramids. It is likewise true at this instant,
"that the Diameter of the square is commensurable
"with its side. What then shall we say? Was there
C.VIII. considered as denoting an Attribute, has always reference to some Person, or Substance. Thus if we say, Went, or, Go, or Whither goeth, or, Might have gone, we must add a Person or Substance, to make the Sentence complete. Cicero went; Cæsar might have gone; whither goeth the Wind? Go! Thou Traitor! But there is a Mode or Form, under which Verbs sometimes appear, where they have no reference at all to Persons or Substances. For example—To eat is pleasant; but

"ever a Time, when it was not incommensurable, as it is certain there was a Time, when there was no Stonehenge, or Pyramids? or is it daily growing less incommensurable, as we are assured of Decays in both those massive Structures?" From these unchangeable Truths, we may pass to their Place, or Region; to the unceasing Intellecction of the universal Mind, ever perfect, ever full, knowing no remissions, languors, &c.


but to fast is wholesome. Here the Verbs, To eat, and, To fast, stand alone by themselves, nor is it requisite or even practicable to prefix a Person or Substance. Hence the Latin and modern Grammarians have called Verbs under this Mode, from this their indefinite nature, Infinitives. Sanctius has given them the name of Impersonals; and the Greeks that of Απαρχέμ-φατα, from the same reason of their not discovering either Person or Number.

These Infinitives go farther. They not only lay aside the character of Attributives, but they also assume that of Substantives, and as such themselves become distinguished with their several Attributes. Thus in the instance above, Pleasant is the Attribute, attending the Infinitive, To Eat; Wholesome the attribute attending the Infinitive, To Fast. Examples in Greek and Latin of like kind are innumerable.

Dulce & decorum est pro patria mori.
Scire tuum nihil est—

M 2
The Stoics in their grammatical inquiries had this Infinitive in such esteem, that they

(i) It is from the INFINITIVE thus participating the nature of a Noun or Substantive, that the best Grammarians have called it sometimes ὄνομα ἰηματικόν, a Verbal Noun; sometimes ὄνομα ἰηματος, The Verb's Noun. The Reason of this Appellation is in Greek more evident, from its taking the prepositional Article before it in all cases; τὸ γράφειν, τῷ γράφειν, τῷ γράφειν. The same construction is not unknown in English.

Thus Spencer,

*For not to have been dip't in Lethe lake,*  
*Could save the Son of Thetis from to die—*

ἀπὸ τῷ θανεῖν. In like manner we say, *He did it, to be rich,* where we must supply by an Ellipsis the Preposition, For. *He did it, for to be rich,* the same as if we had said, *He did it for gain*—ἐνεκα τῷ πλετεἰν, ἐνεκα τῷ χερδεῖ—*in French, pour s'enrichir.* Even when we speak such Sentences, as the following, *I choose TO PHILOSOPHIZE, rather than TO BE RICH,* τὸ φιλοσοφεῖν βίλουκι, ἐπερ τῷ πλετείν, the Infinitives are in nature as much Accusatives, as if we were to say, *I choose PHILOSOPHY rather than RICHES,* τὸν φιλο-
they held this alone to be the genuine C.VIII. PHMA or VERB, a name, which they
denied to all the other Modes. Their rea-
soning was, they considered the true ver-
bal character to be contained *simple* and
*unmixed* in the *Infinitive only*. Thus the
Infinitives, Περποτείων, Ambulare, *To walk,*
mean simply that energy, and *nothing more.*
The other Modes, besides expressing this
energy, *superadd certain Affections,* which
respect persons and circumstances. Thus
Ambulo and Ambula mean not simply *To
walk,* but mean, *I walk,* and, *Walk Thou.*

---

ϕιλοσοφίαν βέλομαι, ἦπερ τοῦ ἀλητοῦ. Thus too
Priscian, speaking of Infinitives—*Currere enim est*
*Cursus*; & *Scribere, Scriptura*; & *Legere,*
*Lectio.* *Itaque frequentur & Nominibus adjunguntur,*
& *alii casualibus, more Nominum; ut Persius,*

*Sed pulcrum est digitis monstrari, & dicier, hic est.*

And soon after—*Cum enim dico, Bonum est le-
gere, nihil aliud significo, nisi, Bona est lectio.*
L. XVIII. p. 1130. See also *Apoll. L. I. c. 8.* Gaza
Gram. L. IV. *Τὸ δὲ ἀπεξεμφατοῦ, ὄνομα ἐστὶ ρήμα-
tos ἃ. τ. λ.*
C.VIII. And hence they are all of them resolvable into the Infinitive, as their Prototype, together with some sentence or word, expressive of their proper Character. Ambulo, I walk; that is, Indico me ambulare, I declare myself to walk. Ambula, Walk Thou; that is, Impero te ambulare, I command thee to walk; and so with the Modes of every other species. Take away therefore the Assertion, the Command, or whatever else gives a Character to any one of these Modes, and there remains nothing more than the mere Infinitive, which (as Priscian says) signifies ipsam rem, quam continet Verbum (k).

(k) See Apollon. L. III. 13. Καθὼς χῶν χαρακτημένων απὸ τινός κ. τ. λ. See also Gaius, in the note before. Igitur a Construzione queque Vim rei Verborum (id est, Nominis, quod significat ipsam rem) habere Infinitivum possimus dignoscere; res autem in Personas distributa facit alios verbi motus.—Itaque omnes modi in hunc, id est, Infinitivum, tranfumuntur, sive resolvuntur. Prisc. L. XVIII. p. 1131. From these Principles Apollonius calls the Infinitive 'Πομα γανοκτατορ, and Priscian, Verbum generale.
The application of this Infinitive is somewhat singular. It naturally coalesces with all those Verbs, that denote any Tendency, Desire, or Volition of the Soul, but not readily with others. Thus it is sense as well as syntax, to say ζέλουσιν ζευ, Cupio vivere, I desire to live; but not to say ἔσθις ζευ, Edo vivere, or even in English, I eat to live, unless by an Ellipsis, instead of I eat for to live; as we say ένεκα τὸ ζευ, or pour vivre. The reason is, that though different Actions may unite in the same Subject, and therefore be coupled together (as when we say, He walked and discoursed) yet the Actions notwithstanding remain separate and distinct. But it is not so with respect to Volitions, and Actions. Here the coalescence is often so intimate, that the Volition is unintelligible, till the Action be expressed. Cupio, Volo, Desidero—I desire, I am willing, I want—What?—The sentences, we see, are defective and imperfect.

We
We must help them then by *Infinitives*, which express the proper *Actions* to which they tend. *Cupio legere, Volo discere, Desidero videre, I desire to read, I am willing to live, I want to see.* Thus is the whole rendered complete, as well in sentiment, as in syntax (1).

And so much for *Modes*, and their several *Species*. We are to attempt to denominate them according to their most eminent characters, it may be done in the following manner. As every necessary truth, and every demonstrative *syllogism* (which last is no more than a combination of such truths) must always be expressed under positive assertions, and as positive

(1) Priscian calls these Verbs, which naturally precede Infinitives, *Verba Voluntativa*; they are called in Greek Προφητικά. See L. XVIII. 1129. but more particularly see Apollonius, L. III. c. 13. where this whole doctrine is explained with great Accuracy. See also Macrobius de Diff. Verb. Gr. & Lat. p. 685. Ed, Var.

—Nec omne ἀπεξεσθήτω εἰκόνες Verbo, &c.
itive assertions only belong to the \textit{Indicative}, we may denominate it for that rea-
son the \textbf{Mode of Science (m)}. Again, as the \textit{Potential} is only conversant about
\textit{Contingents}, of which we cannot say with certainty that they will happen or not, we
may call this Mode, the \textbf{Mode of Con-
jecture}. Again, as those that are igno-
rant and would be informed, must ask
of those that already know, this being the
natural way of becoming \textit{Proficients}; hence
we may call the \textit{Interrogative}, the \textbf{Mode
of Proficiency}.

\textit{Inter cuncta leges, \& percontabere
docitos,}
\textit{Qua ratione queas traducere leniter ovum,}
\textit{Quid purè tranquillet, \&c.} \hspace{1cm} \textbf{Hor.}

Farther still, as the highest and most ex-
cellent use of the \textit{Requisitive} Mode is le-
gislative

\begin{flushright}
(m) \emph{Ob nobilitatem praeivit \textit{Indicativus}, solus \textit{Modus optus Scientiis, solus Pater Veritatis.}} \textit{Scal. de Caufl. L. Lat. c. 116.}
\end{flushright}
C.VIII. gitlative command, we may file it for this reason the Mode of Legislature. Ad Divos adeunto castè, says Cicero in the character of a Roman law-giver; Be it therefore enacted, say the laws of England; and in the same Mode speak the laws of every other nation. It is also in this Mode that the geometrician, with the authority of a legislator, orders lines to be bisected, and circles described, as preparatives to that science, which he is about to establish.

There are other supposed affections of Verbs, such as Number and Person. But these surely cannot be called a part of their essence, nor indeed are they the essence of any other Attribute, being in fact the properties, not of Attributes, but of Substances. The most that can be said, is, that Verbs in the more elegant languages are provided with certain terminations, which respect the Number and Person of every Substantive, that we may know
know with more precision, in a complex C.VIII.

sentence, each particular substance, with its attendant verbal Attributes. The same may be said of Sex, with respect to Adjectives. They have terminations which vary, as they respect Beings male or female, tho' Substances past dispute are alone susceptible of sex (n). We therefore pass over these matters, and all of like kind, as

---

(n) It is somewhat extraordinary, that so acute and rational a Grammarian as Sanctius, should justly deny Genders, or the distinction of Sex to Adjectives, and yet make Persons appertain, not to Substantives, but to Verbs. His commentator Perizonius is much more consistent, who says—At vera si rem recte consideres, ipsis Nominibus & Pronominibus vel maximè, imò unice inquit ipsa Persona; & Verba se habent in Personorum ratione ad Nomina planè sicuti Adjectiva in ratione Generum ad Substantiva, quibus solis auter (Sanctius sicil. L. I. c. 7.) & rectè genus adscribit, exclusis Adjectivis. Sanct. Minerv. L. I. c. 12. There is indeed an exact Analogy between the Accidents of Sex and Person. There are but two Sexes, that is to say, the Male and the Female; and but two Persons (or Characters essential to discourse) that is to say, the Speaker, and the Party addressed. The third Sex and third Person are improperly so called, being in fact but Negations of the other two,
C. VIII. as being rather among the elegancies, than the essentials (o) of language, which essentials are the subject of our present inquiry. The principal of these now remaining is the Difference of Verbs, as to their several Species, which we endeavour to explain in the following manner.

(o) Whoever would see more upon a subject of importance, referred to in many parts of this treatise, and particularly in note (h) of this chapter, may consult Letters concerning Mind, an Octavo Volume published 1750, the Author Mr. John Petvin Vicar of Ilshington in Devon, a person who, though from his retired situation little known, was deeply skilled in the Philosophy both of the Antients and Moderns, and, more than this, was valued by all that knew him for his virtue and worth.
Concerning the Species of Verbs, and their other remaining Properties.

All Verbs, that are strictly so called, Ch.IX. denote (a) Energies. Now as all Energies are Attributes, they have reference of course to certain energizing Substances. Thus it is impossible there should be such Energies, as To love, to fly, to wound, &c. if there were not such beings as Men, Birds, Swords, &c. Farther, every Energy doth not only require an Energizer, but is necessarily conversant about some Subject. For example, if we say, Brutus loves—we must needs supply—loves Cato, Cassius,

(a) We use this word Energy, rather than Motion, from its more comprehensive meaning; it being a sort of Genus, which includes within it both Motion and its Privation. See before, p. 94, 95.
Ch. IX. Cassius, Portia, or some one. The Sword wounds—i.e. wounds Hector, Sarpedon, Priam, or some one. And thus is it, that every Energy is necessarily situate between two Substantives, an Energizer which is active, and a Subject which is passive. Hence then, if the Energizer lead the sentence, the Energy follows its character, and becomes what we call a Verb active.—Thus we say Brutus amat, Brutus loves. On the contrary, if the passive Subject be principal, it follows the character of this too, and then becomes what we call a Verb passive.—Thus we say, Portia amatur, Portia is loved. It is in like manner that the same Road between the summit and foot of the same mountain, with respect to the summit is Ascent, with respect to the foot is Descent. Since then every Energy respects an Energizer or a passive Subject; hence the Reason why every Verb, whether active or passive, has in language a necessary reference.
But to proceed still farther from what has been already observed. *Brutus loved Portia.*—Here Brutus is the Energizer; loved, the Energy, and Portia, the Subject. But it might have been, *Brutus loved Cato, or Cassius, or the Roman Republic;* for the Energy is referable to Subjects infinite. Now among these infinite Subjects, when that happens to occur, which is the Energizer also, as when we say *Brutus loved himself, flew himself, &c.* in such Case the Energy hath to the same being a double Relation, both active and passive. And this it is which gave rise among

(b) The doctrine of Impersonal Verbs has been justly rejected by the best Grammarians, both ancient and modern. See Sancl. Min. I. I. c. 12. L. III. c. 1. L. IV. c. 3. Priscian. L. XVIII. p. 1134. Apoll L. XIII. sub fin. In which places the reader will see a proper Nominative supplied to all Verbs of this supposed Character.
among the Greeks to that species of Verbs, called Verbs middle (c), and such was their true and original use, however in many instances they may have since happened to deviate. In other languages the Verb still retains its active Form, and the passive Subject (he or himself) is expressed like other accusatives.

Again, in some Verbs it happens that the Energy always keeps within the Energizer, and never passes out to any foreign extraneous Subject. Thus when we say, Caesar walketh, Caesar sitteth, it is impossible

(c) ῥα γὰρ καλόμενα μεσότητος γέμματα συνεμπλω·
οιν ἀνείδηκτο ἐνεργεικής ἡ ὕποτηκής διαδίευθες. The Verbs, called Verbs middle, admit a Coincidence of the active and passive Character. Apollon. L. III. c. 7. He that would see this whole Doctrine concerning the power of the Middle Verb explained and confirmed with great Ingenuity and Learning, may consult a small Treatise of that able Critic Kusler, entitled, De vero Uso Verborum Mediorum. A neat edition of this scarce piece has been lately published.
ble the Energy should pass out (as in the case of those Verbs called by the Gram-
marians Verbs transitive) because both the Energizer and the Passive Subject are united in the same Person. For what is the cause of this walking or sitting? — It is the Will and Vital Powers belonging to Caesar. And what is the Subject, made so to move or to fit? — It is the Body and Limbs belonging also to the same Caesar. It is this then forms that species of Verbs, which grammarians have thought fit to call Verbs neuter, as if indeed they were void both of Action and Passion, when perhaps (like Verbs middle) they may be rather said to imply both. Not however to dispute about names, as these Neuters in their Energizer always discover their passive Subject (c), which other

(c) This Character of Neuters the Greeks very happily express by the Terms, 'Αυτωπάθεια and 'Ιδιωπάθεια, which Priscian renders, que ex se in seipsum iit intrinsecus Passio. L. VIII. 790. Consentii Ars apud Pufch. p. 2051.
It may be here observed, that even those Verbs, called *Atrans*, can upon occasion lay aside their transitive character; that is to say, can drop their subsequent Accusative, and *assume the Form of Neuters*, so as to stand by themselves. This happens, when the Discourse respects the mere *Energy* or *Affection* only, and has no regard to the Subject, be it this thing or that. Thus we say, *in oé&n ánovaivó&xen &atos*, *This Man knows not how to read.* Speaking only of the Energy, in which we suppose him deficient. Had the Discourse been upon the Subjects of reading, we must have added them. *in oé&n ánovaivó&xen òx Ômu&ra*, *He knows not how to read Homer, or Virgil, or Cicero, &c.*

Thus Horace,

*Qui cupid aut metuit, juvat illum sic domus aut res,*

*Ut lippum pie&ra tabula—*

*He that desires or fears (not this thing in particular nor that, but in general he within whose breast these*
mars that *Verbs Active require an Accu-* Ch.IX.

sative, while Neuters require none.

Of the above species of Verbs, the *Middle* cannot be called necessary, because most languages have done without it. The Species of Verbs therefore remaining are the Active, the Passive and the Neuter, and those seem essential to all languages whatever (*d*).

*N* 2

There

these affections prevail) has the same joy in a House or Estate, as the Man with bad Eyes has in fine Pictures. So Caesar in his celebrated Laconic Epistle of, *Veni, Vidi, Vici*, where two Actives we see follow one Neuter in the same detached Form, as that Neuter itself. The Glory it seems was in the rapid Sequel of the Events. Conquest came as quick, as he could come himself, and look about him. *Whom* he saw, and *whom* he conquered, was not the thing, of which he boasted. See *Apoll.* L. III. c. 31. p. 279.

(*d*) The *Stoics,* in their logical view of Verbs, as making part in Propositions, considered them under the four following Sorts.

When
Ch. IX. There remains a remark or two farther, and then we quit the Subject of Verbs. It is true in general that the greater part of them denote Attributes of Energy

When a Verb, co-inciding with the Nominative of some Noun, made without farther help a perfect affirmative Sentence, as ἀφησάτως ἔριπατεί, Socrates walketh; then as the Verb in such case implied the Power of a perfect Predicate, they called it for that reason ὑπογρόρημα, a Predicable; or else, from its readiness ἱπεμένων, to co-incide with its Noun in completing the Sentence, they called it Σύμβαρμα, a Co-incider.

When a Verb was able with a Noun to form a perfect affirmative Sentence, yet could not associate with such Noun, but under some oblique Case, as ἁγράτει μεταμίλει, Socratem quoniam: Such a Verb, from its near approach to just Co-incidence, and Predication, they called Παρατύμβαρμα or Παρακατγρόρημα.

When a Verb, though regularly co-inciding with a Noun in its Nominative, still required, to complete the Sentiment, some other Noun under an oblique Case, as Πλάτων φιλεῖ Δίονα, Plato loveth Dio, (where without Dio or some other, the Verb loveth would rest indefinite;)
Energy and Motion. But there are some Ch. IX. which appear to denote nothing more, than a mere simple Adjective, joined to an Assertion, Thus ἰσάζει in Greek, and Equalleth in English, mean nothing more than

nite;) Such Verb, from this Defect they called ῥηλοῦ ῥ σύμβαλλα, or ῥ καταγόμενα, something less than a Co-incider, or less than a Predicable.

Lastly, when a Verb required two Nouns in oblique Cases, to render the Sentiment complete; as when we say Σωκράτει Ἀλκιβίαδος μιλεῖ, Tade me Vite, or the like: Such Verb they called ῥηλοῦ, or ῥλατν ῥ κατα-
σύμβαλλα, or ῥ κατακαταγόμενα. something less than an imperfect Co-incider, or an imperfect Predicable.

These were the Appellations which they gave to Verbs, when employed along with Nouns to the forming of Propositions. As to the Name of ὌΗΜΑ, or VERB, they denied it to them all, giving it only to the Infinitive, as we have shewn already. See page 164. See also Ammon. in Lib. de Interpret. p. 37. Apollon. de Syntaxi L. I. c. 8. L. III. c. 31. p. 279. c. 32. p. 295. Theod. Gaz. Gram. L. IV.

From the above Doctrine it appears, that all Verbs Neuter are Συμβάλλας; Verbs Active, ῥηλοῦ ῥ συμ-
βάλλα.
than $\tau \upsilon \upsilon \varsigma \varepsilon \varsigma$, is equal. So Albeo in Latin is no more than albus sum.

—Campique ingentes eßibus albelt. Virg.

The same may be said of Tumco. Mons tumet, i. e. tumidus est, is tumid. To express the Energy in these instances, we must have recourse to the Inceptives.

\begin{quote}
Fluctus uti primo cæpit cum albesceere Vento. Virg.
\end{quote}

\begin{quote}
Freta ponti Incipiunt agitata tumescere. Virg.
\end{quote}

There are Verbs also to be found, which are formed out of Nouns. So that as in Abstract Nouns (such as Whiteness from White, Goodness from Good) as also in the Infinitive Modes of Verbs, the Attributive is converted into a Substantive; here the Substantive on the contrary is converted into an Attributive. Such are Kυλίζεω from νικαν, to act the part of a Dog, or be a Cy-


Book the First.

Nic; \( \phiιλπο\) from \( \phiιλπο\), to Philip—Ch. IX.

pize, or favour Philip; Syllaturire from Sylla, to meditate acting the same part as Sylla did. Thus too the wise and virtuous Emperour, by way of counsel to himself—\( \omicron\rho\alpha\; \mu\nu\; \alpha\pi\omicron\kappa\omicron\nu\alpha\sigma\rho\omicron\beta\omicron\omicron\omicron\), beware thou beest not be\( \delta\varepsilon\alpha\varphi\varepsilon\)ar’d; as though he said, Beware, that by being Emperor, thou dost not dwindle into a mere Cæsar (c).

In like manner one of our own witty Poets,

Sternhold himself he Out-Sternhelded.

And long before him the facetious Fuller, speaking of one Morgan, a sanguinary Bishop in the Reign of Queen Mary, says of him, that he out-bonner’d even Bonner himself*.

And so much for that Species of Attributes, called Verbs in the strictest Sense.

* Church Hist. B. VIII. p. 21.)

N 4 C H A P.
Concerning those other Attributes, Participles and Adjectives.

Ch. X. The nature of Verbs being understood, that of Participles is no way difficult. Every complete Verb is expressive of an Attribute; of Time; and of an Assertion. Now if we take away the Assertion, and thus destroy the Verb, there will remain the Attribute and the Time, which make the essence of a Participle. Thus take away the Assertion from the Verb, Γράφει, Writeth, and there remains the Participle, Γράφων, Writing, which (without the Assertion) denotes the same Attribute, and the same Time. After the same manner, by withdrawing the Assertion, we discover Γράψεις in Ἐγράψεις, Γράψων in Γράψει, for we chuse to refer to the Greek, as being of all languages the
the most complete, as well in this respect, Ch. X.
as in others.

And so much for Participles (a).

(a) The Latins are defective in this Article of Par-
ticiples. Their Active Verbs, ending in or, (com-
monly called Deponents) have Active Participles of all
Times (such as Loquens, Locutus, Locuturus) but none
of the Passive. Their Actives ending in O, have Par-
ticiples of the Present and Future (such as Scribens, and
Scripturus) but none of the Past. On the contrary,
their Passives have Participles of the Past (such as Scrip-
tus) but none of the Present or Future, unless we ad-
mit such as Scribendus and Docendus for Futures, which
Grammarians controvert. The want of these Particip-
les they supply by a Periphrasis—for γραφως they say,
cum scripsisset—for γραφέως, dum scribitur, &c. In
English we have sometimes recourse to the same Peri-
phrasis; and sometimes we avail ourselves of the same
Auxiliars, which form our Modes and Tenses.

The English Grammar lays down a good rule with
respect to its Participles of the Past, that they all ter-
minate in D, T, or N. This Analogy is perhaps lia-
ble to as few Exceptions, as any. Considering there-
fore how little Analogy of any kind we have in our
lan-
Ch. X. The nature of Verbs and Participles being understood, that of Adjectives becomes easy. A Verb implies (as we have said) both an Attribute, and Time, and an Assertion; a Participle only implies an Attribute, and Time; and an Adjective only implies an Attribute; that is to say, in other Words, an Adjective has no Assertion, and only denotes such an Attribute, as has not its essence either in Motion or its Privation. Thus in general the Attributes of quantity, quality, and relation (such as many and few, great and little, 

Language, it seems wrong to annihilate the few traces, that may be found. It would be well therefore, if all writers, who endeavour to be accurate, would be careful to avoid a corruption, at present so prevalent, of saying, *it was wrote* for, *it was written; he was drowe* for, *he was driven; I have went* for, *I have gone, &c.* in all which instances a Verb is absurdly used to supply the proper Participle, without any necessity from the want of such Word.
little, black and white, good and bad, dou-ble, treble, quadruple, &c.) are all denoted by Adjectives.

It must indeed be confessed, that sometimes even those Attributes, which are wholly foreign to the idea of Motion, assume an assertion, and appear as Verbs. Of such we gave instances before, in al-beo, tumeo, ἵσσεω, and others. These however, compared to the rest of Verbs, are but few in number, and may be called, if thought proper, Verbal Adjectives. It is in like manner, that Participles insensibly pass too into Adjectives. Thus doctus in Latin, and learned in English lose their power, as Participles, and mean a Person possessed of an habitual Quality. Thus Vir eloquens means not a man now speaking, but a man, who possesses the habit of speaking, whether he speak or no. So when we say in English, he is a thinking Man, an understanding Man, we mean not a person, whose mind is in actual Energy.
Ch. X. Energy, but whose mind is enriched with a larger portion of those powers. It is indeed no wonder, as all Attributives are homogeneous, that at times the several species should appear to interfere, and the difference between them be scarcely perceptible. Even in natural species, which are congenial and of kin, the specific difference is not always to be discerned, and in appearance at least they seem to run into each other.

We have shewn already (b) in the Instances of Φιλοσοφίς, Syllaturire, Ἀποκατασκόμεναι, and others, how Substantives may be transformed into Verbal Attributives. We shall now shew, how they may be converted into Adjectives. When we say the party of Pompey, the style of Cicero, the philosophy of Socrates, in

(b) Sup. p. 182, 183.
in these cases the party, the file, and the Ch. X. philosophy spoken of, receive a stamp, and character from the persons, whom they respect. Those persons therefore perform the part of Attributes, that is, stamp and characterize their respective Subjects. Hence then \textit{they actually pass into Attributes}, and assume, as such, the form of Adjectives. And thus it is we say, the Pompeian party, the Ciceronian file, and the Socratic philosophy. It is in like manner for a trumpet of Brass, we say a brazen Trumpet; for a Crown of Gold, a golden Crown, &c. Even Pronominal Substantives admit the like mutation. Thus instead of saying, the Book of Me, of Thee, and of Him, we say My Book, Thy Book, and His Book; instead of saying the Country of Us, of You, and of Them, we say, Our Country, Your Country, and Their Country, which Words may be called so many Pronominal Adjectives.

It
Ch. X. It has been observed already, and must needs be obvious to all, that Adjectives, as marking Attributes, can have no sex (c). And yet their having terminations conformable to the sex, number, and case of their Substantive, seems to have led grammarians into that strange absurdity of ranging them with Nouns, and separating them from Verbs, tho' with respect to these they are perfectly homogeneous; with respect to the others, quite contrary. They are homogeneous with respect to Verbs, as both sorts denote Attributes; they are heterogeneous with respect to Nouns, as never properly denoting Substances. But of this we have spoken before (d).

Sup. p. 171:
(d) Sup. C. VI. Note (a). See also C. III. p. 28, &c.
The Attributives hitherto treated, that Ch. X. is to say, Verbs, Participles, and Adjectives, may be called Attributives of the first Order. The reason of this name will be better understood, when we have more fully discussed Attributives of the second Order, to which we now proceed in the following chapter.
Concerning Attributives of the Second Order.

As the Attributives hitherto mentioned denote the Attributes of Substances, so there is an inferior class of them, which denote the Attributes only of Attributes.

To explain by examples in either kind — when we say, Cicero and Pliny were both of them eloquent; Statius and Virgil both of them wrote; in these instances the Attributives, eloquent, and wrote, are immediately referable to the substantives, Cicero, Virgil, &c. As therefore denoting the Attributes of Substances, we call them Attributives of the first Order. But when we say Pliny was moderately eloquent, but Cicero exceedingly eloquent; Statius wrote indifferently, but Virgil wrote admirably; in
in these instances, the Attributives, Mo-Ch. XI. derately, Exceedingly, Indifferently, Ad-

mirably, are not referable to Substantives, but to other Attributives, that is, to the words, Eloquent, and Wrote. As therefore denoting Attributes of Attributes, we call them Attributives of the se-

cond order.

Grammarians have given them the Name of Επιστήματα, Adverbia, Ad-

verbs. And indeed if we take the word Ρημα, or, Verb, in its most comprehensive Signification, as including not only Verbs properly so called, but also Participles and Adjectives [an usage, which may be justi-
fied by the best authorities (a)] we shall find

(a) Thus Aristotle in his Treatise de Interpretatione, instances Ἀνθρωπος as a Noun, and Λεγως as a Verb. So Ammonius—κατὰ τῶτο τὸ σημανόμενον, τὸ μὲν ΚΑΙΟΣ καὶ ΔΙΚΑΙΟΣ καὶ ὅσα τοῖς ἜΦΗΜΕΤΑ λέγονται καὶ ἐν ὈΝΟΜΑΣ. According to this Signi-

fication (that is of denoting the Attributes of Substance and
Ch. XI. find the name, Ἐπιθήμια, or Adverb, to be a very just appellation, as denoting a Part of Speech, the natural Appendage of Verbs. So great is this dependence in Grammatical Syntax, that an Adverb can no more subsist without its Verb, than a Verb can subsist without its Substantive. It is the same here, as in certain natural Subjects. Every Colour for its existence as much requires a Superficies, as the Superficies for its existence requires a solid Body (b).

Among

and the Predicate in Propositions) the words, Fair, Just, and the like, are called Verbs, and not Nouns. Amb. in libr. de Interp. p. 37. b. Arist. de Interp. L. I. c. i. See also of this Treatise, c. 6. Note (a) p. 87.

In the same manner the Stoics talked of the Participle. Nam Participlum connumerantes Verbis, Participiale Verbum vocabant vel Casuale. Priscian. L. I. p. 574.

(b) This notion of ranging the Adverb under the same Genus with the Verb (by calling them both Attributives) and of explaining it to be the Verb's Epithet or Adjective (by
Among the Attributes of Substance are Ch. XI. reckoned Quantities, and Qualities. Thus we say, a white Garment, a high Mountain. Now some of these Quantities and Qualities are capable of Intension, and Remission. Thus we say, a Garment exceedingly white; a Mountain tolerably high.

(by calling it the Attributive of an Attributive) is conformable to the best authorities. Theodore Gaza defines an Adverb, as follows—μίκρος λόγῳ ἀπίστων, κατ’ ῥήματος λεγόμενον, ἡ ἐπιπλεγόμενον ῥήματι, καὶ ὅπως ἐπίθετος ῥήματος. A Part of Speech devoid of Cases, predicated of a Verb, or subjoined to it, and being as it were the Verb's Adjective. L. IV. (where by the way we may observe, how properly the Adverb is made an Adjective, since its principal sometimes has cases, as in Valde Sapientes; sometimes has none, as in Valde amat.) Priscian's definition of an Adverb is as follows—Adverbium est pars orationis indeclinabilis, cuius significatio Verbis adjicitur. Hoc enim perficit Adverbium Verbis additum, quod adjectiva nominativa appellativis nominibus adjuncta; ut prudens homo; prudenter egit; felix Vir; feliciter vivit. L. XV. p. 1003. And before, speaking of the Stoics, he says—Etiam Adverbia Nominibus vel Verbis connumerabant, & quae adjectiva Verborum nominabant. L. I. p. 574. See also Apoll. de Syn. L. I. c. 3. sub fin.
Ch. XI. **high**, or **moderately high**. It is plain therefore that Intension and Remission are among the Attributes of such Attributes. Hence then one copious Source of secondary Attributives, or Adverbs, to denote these two, that is, Intension, and Remission. The Greeks have their ἐνυμαςῶς, μάλισα, ὑσια; the Latins their valde, vehementer, maximē, satis, mediocriter; the English their greatly, vastly, extremely, sufficiently, moderately, tolerably, indifferently, &c.

Farther than this, where there are different Intensions of the same Attribute, they may be compared together. Thus if the Garment A be exceedingly White, and the Garment B be moderately White, we may say, the Garment A is more white than the Garment B.

In these instances the Adverb More not only denotes Intension, but relative Intension. Nay we stop not here. We not
not only denote Intension merely relative Ch.XI. but relative Intension, than which there is none greater. Thus we not only say the Mountain A is more high than the Mountain B, but that it is the most high of all Mountains. Even Verbs, properly so called, as they admit simple Intensions, so they admit also these comparatives ones. Thus in the following Example——Fame he loveth more than Riches, but Virtue of all things he loveth most—the Words more and most denote the different comparative Intensions of the Verbal Attributive, Loveth.

And hence the rise of Comparison, and of its different Degrees; which cannot well be more, than the two Species above mentioned, one to denote Simple Excess, and one to denote Superlative. Were we indeed to introduce more degrees than these, we ought perhaps to introduce infinite, which is absurd. For why stop at a limited Number, when in all subjects,
Ch.XI. susceptible of Intension, the intermediate Excesses are in a manner infinite? There are infinite Degrees of more White, between the first Simple White, and the Superlative, Whitest; the same may be said of more Great, more Strong, more Minute, &c. The Doctrine of Grammarians about three such Degrees, which they call the Positive, the Comparative and the Superlative, must needs be absurd; both because in their Positive there is† no Comparison at all, and because their Superlative is a Comparative, as much as their Comparative itself. Examples to evince this may be found everywhere. Socrates was the most wise of all the Athenians—Homer was the most sublime of all Poets.—

—Cadit et Riphæus, justissimus unus Qui fuit in Teucris— Virg.

It must be confessed these Comparatives, Ch. XI, as well the *simple*, as the *superlative*, seem sometimes to part with their *relative* Nature, and only retain their *intensive*. Thus in the Degree, denoting *simple* Excess,

**Tristior, et lacrumis oculos suffusa nitentes.** Virg.

**Rusticior paulo cib—** Hor.

In the *Superlative* this is more usual.

*Vir doctissimus, Vir fortissimus, a most learned Man, a most brave Man,—that is to say, not the bravest and most learned Man, that ever existed, but a Man possessing those Qualities in an eminent Degree.*

The Authors of Language have contrived a method to retrench these Comparative Adverbs, by expressing their force in the Primary Attributive. Thus instead of *More fair*, they say *FAIRER*; instead of *Most fair*, *FAIREST*, and the same holds true
true both in the Greek and Latin. This practice however has reached no farther than to Adjectives, or at least to Participles, sharing the nature of Adjectives. Verbs perhaps were thought too much diversified already, to admit more Variations without perplexity.

As there are some Attributives, which admit of Comparison, so there are others, which admit of none. Such for example are those, which denote that Quality of Bodies arising from their Figure; as when we say, a Circular Table, a Quadrangular Court, a Conical Piece of Metal, &c. The reason is, that a million of things, participating the same Figure, participate it equally, if they participate it at all. To say therefore that while A and B are both quadrangular, A is more or less quadrangular than B, is absurd. The same holds true in all Attributives, denoting definite Quantities, whether continuous or discrete, whether absolute or relative. Thus the two-foot Rule A
A cannot be more a two-foot Rule, than any other of the same length. Twenty Lions cannot be more twenty, than twenty Flies. If A and B be both triple, or quadruple to C, they cannot be more triple, or more quadruple, one than the other. The reason of all this is, there can be no Comparison without Intension and Remission; there can be no Intension and Remission in things always definite; and such are the Attributes, which we have last mentioned.

In the same reasoning we see the cause, why no Substantive is susceptible of these Comparative Degrees. A Mountain cannot be said more to be, or to exist, than a Mole-hill, but the More and Less must be sought for in their Quantities. In like manner, when we refer many Individuals to one Species, the Lion A cannot be called more a Lion, than the Lion B, but if more any thing, he is more fierce, more speedy, or exceeding in some such Attribute. So again, in referring many Species to one Genus,
Ch. XI. Genus, a Crocodile is not more an Animal, than a Lizard; nor a Tiger, more than a Cat, but if any thing, they are more bulky, more strong, &c. the Excess, as before, being derived from their Attributes. So true is that saying of the acute Stagirite—that Substance is not susceptible of More and Less (c). But this by way of digression, to return to the subject of Adverbs.

Of the Adverbs, or secondary Attributives already mentioned, these denoting Intensation or Remission may be called Adverbs of Quantity continuous; Once, Twice, Thrice, are Adverbs of Quantity discrete; More and Most, Less and Least, to which may be added Equally, Proportionally, &c. are

(c) εν δει ατιοντο ειςια το μελλον και το ωτιον, Categor. c. 5. See also Sansius, L. I. c. 11. L. II. c. 10, 11. where the subject of Comparatives is treated in a very masterly and philosophical manner. See also Priscian, p. 598. Derivantur igitur Comparativa a Nominibus Adjectivus, &c.
are Adverbs of Relation. There are others of Quality, as when we say, Honestly industrious, Prudently brave, they fought bravely, he painted finely, a Portico formed Circularly, a Plain cut Triangularly, &c.

And here it is worth while to observe, how the same thing, participating the same Essence, assumes different grammatical Forms from its different relations. For example, suppose it should be asked, how differ Honestly, Honestly, and Honestly. The Answer is, they are in Essence the same, but they differ, in as much as Honestly is the Attributive of a Substantive; Honestly, of a Verb; and Honestly, being divested of these its attributive Relations, assumes the Power of a Substantive, so as to stand by itself.

The Adverbs, hitherto mentioned, are common to Verbs of every Species; but there
there are some, which are peculiar to *Verbs properly so called*, that is to say, to such as denote *Motion* or *Energy*, with their *Privations*. All *Motion* and *Rest* imply *Time* and *Place*, as a kind of necessary *Coincidents*. Hence then, if we would express the *Place* or *Time* of either, we must needs have recourse to the proper *Adverbs*; of *Place*, as when we say, *he stood there*; *he went hence*; *he travelled far*, &c. of *Time*, as when we say, *he stood then*; *he went afterward*; *he travelled formerly*, &c. Should it be asked——why *Adverbs of Time*, when *Verbs* have *Tenses*? The Answer is, tho’ *Tenses* may be sufficient to denote the greater Distinctions of *Time*, yet to denote them all by *Tenses* would be a perplexity without end. What a variety of *Forms*, to denote *Yesterday*, *To-day*, *Tomorrow*, *Formerly*, *Lately*, *Just now*, *Now*, *Immediately*, *Presently*, *Soon*, *Hereafter*, &c.? It was this then that made
the Temporal Adverbs necessary, over and above the Tenses.

To the Adverbs just mentioned may be added those, which denote the Intensions and Remissions peculiar to Motion, such as speedily, hastily, swiftly, slowly, &c. as also Adverbs of Place, made out of Prepositions, such as ἀνω and κάτω from ἀνά and κάτα, in English upward and downward, from up and down. In some instances the Preposition suffers no change, but becomes an Adverb by nothing more than its Application, as when we say, circa equitat, he rides about; prope cecidit, he was near falling; Verum ne post conferas culpam in me, But do not after lay the blame on me (d).

There

There are likewise Adverbs of Interrogation, such as Where, Whence, Whither, How; of which there is this remarkable, that when they lose their Interrogative power, they assume that of a Relative, so as even to represent the Relative or Subjunctive Pronoun. Thus Ovid

Et Seges est, ubi Troja fuit—
translated in our old English Ballad,

And Corn doth grow, where Troy town stood.

That is to say, Seges est in eo loco, in quo &c. Corn growth in that place, in which, &c. the power of the Relative, being implied in the Adverb. Thus Terence,

Hujusmodi mihi res semper comminisci, Ubi me excarnusces— Heaut. IV. 6.

where ubi relates to res, and stands for quibus rebus.
It is in like manner that the *Relative* Ch. XI. *Pronoun* upon occasion becomes an *Interrogative*, at least in *Latin* and *English*. Thus *Horace*,

*Quem Virum aut Heroa lyrâ, vel acri Tibiâ fumes celebrare, Clio?*

So *Milton*,

*Who first seduc'd them to that soul revolt?*

The reason of all this is as follows. *The Pronoun* and *Adverbs* here mentioned are all alike, in their original character, *Relatives*. Even when they become *Interrogatives*, they lose not this character, but are still *Relatives*, as much as ever. The difference is, that *without* an *Interrogation*, they have reference to a *Subject*, which is *antecedent*, *definite* and *known*; *with* an *Interrogation*, to a *Subject* which is *subsequent*, *indefinite*, and *unknown*, and which
which it is expected that the Answer should express and ascertain,

Who first seduced them?

The very Question itself supposes a Seducer, to which, tho' unknown, the Pronoun, Who, has a reference.

Th' infernal Serpent—

Here in the Answer we have the Subject, which was indefinite, ascertained; so that the Who in the Interrogation is (we see) as much a Relative, as if it had been said originally, without any interrogation at all, It was the Infernal Serpent, who first seduced them.

And thus is it that Interrogatives and Relatives mutually pass into each other.

And so much for Adverbs, peculiar to Verbs properly so called. We have already spoken of those, which are common to all Attributives. We have likewise attempted
tempted to explain their general Nature, Ch. XI. which we have found to consist in being the Attributes of Attributes. There remains only to add, that Adverbs may be derived from almost every Part of Speech: from Prepositions, as when from After we derive Afterwards—from Participles, and through these from Verbs, as when from Know we derive Knowing, and thence Knowingly; from Scio, Sciens, and thence Scienter—from Adjectives, as when from Virtuous and Vicious, we derive Virtuously and Viciously—from Substantives, as when from Πιθήκος, an Ape, we derive Πιθήκεον βλέπειν, to look Apishly; from Λέων, a Lion, Λεονδώσεις, Leoninely—nay even from Proper Names, as when from Socrates and Demosthenes, we derive Socratically and Demosthenically. It was Socratically reasoned, we say; it was Demosthenically spoken*. Of the same sort are

are many others, cited by the old Grammarians, such as Catiliniter from Catilina, Sifenniter from Sifenna, Tullianè from Tullius, &c. (e).

Nor are they thus extensive only in Derivation, but in Signification also. Theodore Gaza in his Grammar informs us (f), that Adverbs may be found in every one of the Predicaments, and that the readiest way to reduce their Infinitude, was to refer them by classes to those ten universal Genera. The Stoics too called the Adverb by the name of Πανδέξιος, and that from a view to the same multiform Nature. Omnia in se capit quasi collata per satiram, concessa sibi rerum variâ potestate. It is thus that Sophater explains the


(f) —διὸ δὲ ἕνα ἀμείνον ἵσως δίκα νῦ τῶν ἐπιρρηματων γίνει Σίοβαί εἰκείνα, ἢςὶαν, ωοῖν, ωοῖν, ὅρος τι, κ. τ. λ. Gram. Introd. L. II.
the Word (g), from whose authority Ch. XI. we know it to be Stoical. But of this enough.

And now having finished those principal parts of Speech, the substantive and the attributive, which are significant when alone, we proceed to those auxiliary parts, which are only significant, when associated. But as these make the subject of a Book by themselves, we here conclude the first Book of this Treatise.

Concerning Definitives.

What remains of our Work, Ch. I. is a matter of less difficulty, it being the same here, as in some Historical Picture; when the principal Figures are once formed, it is an easy labour to design the rest.
Definitives, the Subject of the present Chapter, are commonly called by Grammarians, Articles, Articuli, 'Αρτικολο. They are of two kinds, either those properly and strictly so called, or else the Pronominal Articles, such as This, That, Any, &c.

We shall first treat of those Articles more strictly so denominat'd, the reason and use of which may be explained, as follows.

The visible and individual Substances of Nature are infinitely more numerous, than for each to admit of a particular Name. To supply this defect, when any Individual occurs, which either wants a proper Name, or whose proper Name is not known, we ascertain it, as well as we can, by referring it to its Species; or, if the Species be unknown, then at least
least to some Genus. For example—a Ch. I. certain Object occurs, with a head and limbs, and appearing to possess the powers of Self-motion and Sensation. If we know it not as an Individual, we refer it to its proper Species, and call it Dog, or Horse, or Lion, or the like. If none of these Names fit, we go to the Genus, and call it, Animal.

But this is not enough. The Thing, at which we are looking, is neither a Species, nor a Genus. What is it then? An Individual.—Of what kind? Known, or unknown? Seen now for the first time, or seen before, and now remembered?—It is here we shall discover the use of the two Articles (A) and (The). (A) respects our primary Perception, and denotes Individuals as unknown; (The) respects our secondary Perception, and denotes Individuals as known. To explain by an example—I see an object pass by
Ch. I. by, which I never saw till now. What do I say? — There goes a Beggar with a long Beard. The Man departs, and returns a week after. What do I say then? — There goes the Beggar with the long Beard. The Article only is changed, the rest remains un-altered.

Yet mark the force of this apparently minute Change. The Individual, once vague, is now recognized as something known, and that merely by the efficacy of this latter Article, which tacitly insinuates a kind of previous acquaintance, by referring the present Perception to a like Perception already past (a).

The Truth is, the Articles (A) and (The), are both of them definitives, as they circumscribe the latitude of Genera and Species, by reducing them for the most

(a) See B. I. c. 5. p. 63, 64.
most part to denote Individuals. The Ch. I. difference however between them is this; the Article (A) leaves the Individual itself unascertained, whereas the Article (THE) ascertains the Individual also, and is for that reason the more accurate Definitive of the two.

It is perhaps owing to the imperfect manner, in which the Article (A) defines, that the Greeks have no Article correspondent to it, but supply its place, by a negation of their Article, 'O. 'O άνθρωπος ἐπεσεν, THE man fell—άνθρωπος ἐπεσεν, A Man fell, without any thing prefixed, but only the Article withdrawn (b). Even in English, where the Article

(b) Τά γὰρ ἀφιγομένα ὡς τοὺς νοομενα, ἦ τὰ ἄλλα συγκέκριμα ὑπὸ ὄρισμον τῇ προσῶπῳ ἀνθρώπου. Those things, which are at times understood indefinitely, the addition of the Article makes to be definite as to their Person. Apoll. L. IV. c. 1. See of the same author, L. I. c. 6, 36.
Ch. I. Article (A) cannot be used, as in plurals, its force is express by the same Negation. *Those are the Men*, means those are Individuals, of which we possess some *previous Knowledge*. *Those are Men*, the Article apart, means no more than that they are so many *vague* and *uncertain* Individuals, just as the Phrase, *A Man*, in the singular, implies one of the same number.

*But*

...
But tho' the Greeks have no Article Ch. I. correspondent to the Article (A,) yet nothing can be more nearly related, than their 'O, to the Article, THE. 'O βασιλεὺς, THE King; TO δῶρον, THE Gift, &c. Nor is this only to be proved by parallel examples, but by the Attributes of the Greek Article, as they are described by Apollonius, one of the earliest and most acute of the old Grammarians, now remaining.

"Εσιν ἐν καθ' ὑ ἐν ἄλλοις ἀπεφημᾶμεθα, ἵδιον ἄρθρων ἢ ἀναφορά, ἢ ἐς προκατειλεγμένες προσώπες παραστάτη. — Now the peculiar Attribute of the Article, as we have shewn elsewhere, is that Reference, which implies some certain Person already mentioned. Again—"Ου γὰρ δύνε τά ὄνόματα ἐξ αὐτῶν ἀναφορὰν παρίσησιν, εἰ μὴ συμπαράλλακτοιν τὸ ἄρθρον, ἢ ἐξαιρετὸς ἐσιν ἡ ἀναφορά. For Nouns of themselves imply not Re-
Ch. I. Reference, unless they take to them the Article, whose peculiar Character is Reference.

Again—Τὸ ἀφανὶν προφετεύσαν γνῶσιν δηλοῖ

—The Article indicates a pre-established acquaintance (c).

His reasoning upon Proper Names is worth remarking. Proper Names (he tells us) often fall into Homonymie, that is, different Persons often go by the same Name. To solve this ambiguity, we have recourse to Adjectives or Epithets. For example—there were two Grecian chiefs, who bore the name of Ajax. It was not therefore without reason, that Meneleus uses Epithets, when this intent was to distinguish the one of them from the other.

'Αλλα

(c) Apoll. de Synt. I. I. c. 6, 7. His account of Reference is as follows—Ἰδώμα προφορὰς προκατελογμένων προσώπων δεύτερα γνώσεις. The peculiar character of Reference is the second or repeated Knowledge of some Person already mentioned. I. II. c. 3.
If both Ajaxes (says he) cannot be spared, — at least alone
Let mighty Telamonian Ajax come.

Apollonius proceeds—Even Epithets themselves are diffused thro' various Subjects, in as much as the same Adjective may be referred to many Substantives.

In order therefore to render both Parts of Speech equally definite, that is to say the Adjective as well as the Substantive, the Adjective itself assumes an Article before it, that it may indicate a Reference to some single Person only, μόναδικὴ ἀναφορὰ, according to the Author's own Phrase. And thus it is we say, Τρύφων ὁ Γραμματικὸς, Trypho the Grammarian; Ἀπολλόδωρος ὁ Κυρήναιος, Apollodorus the Cyrenean, &c. The Author's Conclusion of this
Ch. I. this Section is worth remarking. Δευτέρων ἄρα κατὰ τὸ τοῖς τὴν ἱστορείας ἐς τὴν ἀῤῥήν, συνιδώμεσα τὸ ἐπιθετικὸν τῷ κυρίῳ ὄνοματι—It is with reason therefore that the Article is here also added, as it brings the Adjective to an Individuality, as precise, as the proper Name (d).

We may carry this reasoning farther, and shew, how by help of the Article even common Appellatives come to have the force of proper Names, and that unassisted by epithets of any kind. Among the Athenians Πλοῖον meant Ship; "Εὔδεκα, Eleven; and "Αὐθρωπός, Man. Yet add but the Article, and Τὸ Πλοῖον, THE SHIP, meant that particular Ship, which they sent annually to Delos; 'Οι 'Εὔδεκα, THE ELEVEN, meant, certain Officers of Justice; and 'Ο "Αὐθρωπός, THE MAN, meant their public Executioner. So in English, City, is a Name

(d) See Apoll. L. I. c. 12. where by mistake Menelhaus is put for Menelheus.
Name common to many places; and Ch. I. Speaker, a Name common to many Men. Yet if we prefix the Article, the City means our Metropolis; and the Speaker, a high Officer in the British Parliament.

And thus it is by an easy transition, that the Article, from denoting Reference, comes to denote Eminence also; that is to say, from implying an ordinary pre-acquaintance, to presume a kind of general and universal Notoriety. Thus among the Greeks 'O Ποιητής, the Poet, meant Homer (e); and 'Ο Σταγηρίτης, the Stagirite, meant Ariflotle; not that there were not

(e) There are so few exceptions to this Observation, that we may fairly admit it to be generally true. Yet Ariflotle twice denotes Euripides by the Phrase ὅ τοιλήνας, once at the end of the seventh Book of his Nicomachian Ethics, and again in his Physics, L. II. 2. Plato also in his tenth Book of Laws (p. 901. Edit. Serr.) denotes Hesiod after the same manner.
not many Poets, beside Homer; and many Stagirites, beside Aristotle; but none equally illustrious for their Poetry and Philosophy.

It is on a like principle that Aristotle tells us, it is by no means the same thing to assert—εἶναι τὴν ἡδονὴν ἄγαθον, or, TO ἄγαθον—that, Pleasure is A Good, or, THE Good. The first only makes it a common Object of Desire, upon a level with many others, which daily raise our wishes; the last supposes it that supreme and sovereign Good, the ultimate Scope of all our Actions and Endeavors (f).

But to pursue our Subject. It has been said already that the Article has no meaning, but when associated to some other word.—To what words then may it be associated?—To such as require defining, for

for it is by nature a *Definitive*.—And Ch. I.

what *Words* are these?—Not those which already are *as definite, as may be*. Nor yet those, which, being indefinite, cannot properly be made otherwise. It remains then they must be those, which though indefinite, are yet capable, through the *Article*, of becoming definite.

Upon these Principles we see the reason, why it is absurd to say, *O ἘΓΩ*, *The I*, or *Ὁ ΣΥ*, *The Thou*, because nothing can make those *Pronouns* more *definite*, than they are (*g*). The same may be asserted of...

(*g*) *Apollonius* makes it part of the *Pronoun's Definition*, to refuse coalescence with the *Article*. *Εξεινο ἐν Ἀντωνυμία, τὸ μετὰ δείξεως ἢ ἀναφορᾶς ἀντονομαζέμενον, ὃ ὑπάρχει τὸ ἄγθεον*. That therefore is a *Pronoun*, which with *Indication* or *Reference* is put for a *Noun*, and with which the *Article* doth not **associate**. L. II. c. 5. So *Goza*, speaking of *Pronouns*—Πάντα ἡ—ἐν ἐπιθέμους ἄγθεον. L. IV. *Priscian* says the same. *Iure igitur apud Graecos prima Q_
Ch. I. of Proper Names, and though the *Greeks* say ὡ Σωκράτης, ὡ Σωφρόνη, and the like, yet the Article is a mere Pleonasm, unless perhaps it serve to distinguish Sexes. By the same rule we cannot say in *Greek* ΟΙ ΑΜΦΟΤΕΡΟΙ, or in *English*, THE BOTH, because these Words in their own nature are each of them perfectly defined, so that to define them farther would be quite superfluous. Thus if it be said, I have read BOTH Poets, this plainly indicates a definite pair, of whom some mention has been made already; Αὐαδ ἐγνωσίνη, a known Duad, as Appollonius expresses himself, (h) when he speaks of this Subject. On the contrary, if it be said, I have read Two Poets, this may mean any Pair out of

---

et secunda persona pronominum, quae sine dubio demonstrativa sunt, articulis adjungi non possunt; nec tertia, quando demonstrativa est. L. XII. p. 938.—In the beginning of the same Book, he gives the true reason of this. Supra omnes alias partes orationis finit personas Pronomen.

(h) Apollon. L. I. c. 16.
of all that ever existed. And hence this Ch. I. Numeral, being in this Sense *indefinite* (as indeed are all others, as well as itself) is forced to *assume the Article*, whenever it would become *definite*. And thus it is, *The Two* in *English*, and *OI ΔΥΟ* in *Greek*, mean nearly the same thing, as *Both* or *ΑΜΦΟΤΕΡΟΙ*. Hence also it is, that as Two, when taken alone, has reference to some *primary and indefinite Perception*, while the Article, *The*, has reference to some *secondary and definite*; hence I say the Reason, why it is bad *Greek* to say *ΔΥΟ OI ΑΝΘΡΩΠΟΙ*, and bad *English*, to say *Two the Men*. Such Syntax is in fact a *Blending of Incompatibles*.

---

* This explains *Servius* on the XII*th* *Aeneid*. v. 511. where he tells us that *Duorum* is put for *Amborum*. In *English* or *Greek* the Article would have done the business, for *the Two*, or *τοιν δύοιν* are equivalent to *Both* or * Amphibian*, but not so *Duorum*, because the *Latins* have no Articles to prefix.

† *Sup. p. 215, 216.*
bles, that is to say of a defined Substantive with an undefined Attributive. On the contrary to say in Greek \textit{AMΦΟΤΕΡΟΙ OΙ ANΘΡΩΠΟΙ}, or in English, \textit{Both the Men}, is good and allowable, because the Substantive cannot possibly be less apt, by being defined, to coalesce with an Attributive, which is defined as well as itself. So likewise, it is correct to say, \textit{OΙ ΔΥΟ ΑΝΘΡΩΠΟΙ, The two Men}, because here the Article, being placed in the beginning, \textit{extends its Power} as well through Substantive as Attributive, and equally contributes to \textit{define} them both.

As some of the words above admit of no Article, because they are by Nature as definite as may be, so there are others, which admit it not, because they are not to be defined at all. Of this sort are all \textit{Interrogatives}. If we question about \textit{Substances}, we cannot say \textit{O ΤΙΣ ΟΤΟΣ, The who is this}; but \textit{ΤΙΣ ΟΤ-}
OYTOΣ, WHO IS THIS? (i). The same Ch. I. as to Qualities and both kinds of Quantity. We say without an Article ΠΟΙΟΣ, ΠΟ-
ΣΟΙ, ΠΗΛΙΚΟΣ, in English, what sort of, how many, how great. The Reason is, that the Articles 'O, and the respect Beings, already known; Inter-
rogatives respect Beings, about which we are ignorant; for as to what we know, Interrogation is superfluous.

In a word the natural Associators with Articles are all those common Appellatives, which denote the several Genera and Spe-
cies of Beings. It is these, which, by assuming a different Article, serve either to ex-
plain an Individual upon its first being per-
ceived, or else to indicate, upon its return, a Recognition, or repeated Knowledge (k).

Q 3

(i) Apollonius calls ΤΙΣ, ἰναυιωτατον των αξιων, a Part of Speech, most contrary, most averse to Articles. L. IV. c. 1.

(k) What is here said respects the two Articles, which we have in English. In Greek, the Article does no more, than imply a Recognition. See before p. 216, 217, 218.
Ch. I. We shall here subjoin a few Instances of the Peculiar Power of Articles.

Every Proposition consists of a Subject, and a Predicate. In English these are distinguished by their Position, the Subject standing first, the Predicate last. Happiness is Pleasure—Here, Happiness is the Subject; Pleasure, the Predicate. If we change their order, and say, Pleasure is Happiness; then Pleasure becomes the Subject, and Happiness the Predicate. In Greek these are distinguished not by any Order or Position, but by help of the Article, which the Subject always assumes, and the Predicate in most instances (some few excepted) rejects. Happiness is Pleasure—ἡ ὑδώρ ἡ εὐδαιμονία—Pleasure is Happiness—ἡ ὑδώρ ἡ εὐδαιμονία—Fine things are difficult—καλεῖται τὰ μαλά—Difficult things are fine—τὰ καλεῖται μαλά.
In Greek it is worth attending, how in Ch. I. the same Sentence, the same Article, by being prefixed to a different Word, quite changes the whole meaning. For example—'Ο Πτολεμαῖος γυμνασιαρχήσας ἔτιμήθη—Ptolemy, having presided over the Games, was publickly honoured. The Participle γυμνασιαρχήσας has here no other force, then to denote to us the Time, when Ptolemy was honoured, viz. after having presided over the Games. But if, instead of the Substantive, we join the Participle to the Article, and say, 'Ο γυμνασιαρχήσας Πτολεμαῖος ἔτιμήθη, our meaning is then—The Ptolemy, who presided over the Games, was honoured. The Participle in this case, being joined to the Article, tends tacitly to indicate not one Ptolemy but many, of which number a particular one participated of honour (1).

Q. 4

(1) Apollon. L. I. c. 33, 34.
Ch. I. In *English* likewise it deserves remarking, how the Sense is changed by changing of the *Articles*, tho' we leave every other Word of the Sentence untouched.— *And Nathan said unto David, THOU ART THE MAN*. In that single, *THOU ART A MAN*. Might not the King well have demanded upon so impertinent a position,

*Non dices Hodie, quorsum Hæc tam putida tendant?*

*ΣΤΕΙ Ο ΑΝΗΡ. BASIL. B. κεΦ, ιερ.*
But enough of such Speculations. The only remark, which we shall make on them, is this; that "minute Change in PRINCIPLES leads to mighty Change in EFFECTS; so that well are PRINCIPLES intitled to our regard, however in appearance they may be trivial and low."

The Articles already mentioned are those strictly so called; but besides these there are the PRONOMINAL ARTICLES, such as This, That, Any, Other, Some, All, No, or None, &c. Of these we have spoken already in our Chapter of Pronouns (m), where

(m) See B. I. c. 5. p. 72, 73. It seems to have been some view of words, like that here given, which induced Quintilian to say of the Latin Tongue—Noster sermo Articulis non desiderat; ideoque in alias partes orationis sparguntur. Inft. Orat. I. I. c. 4. So Scaliger. His declaratis, satis constat Graecorum Articulis non neglectos a nobis, sed eorum usum superfluum. Nam ubi aliquid praebendum est, quod Graeci per articulum efficiunt (τὰ ἑξο & τὰνος) expletur a Latinis per Is aut ILLE; Is, aut
Ch. I. where we have shewn, when they may be taken as Pronouns, and when as Articles. Yet in truth it must be confessed, if the Essence of an Article be to define and ascertain, they are much more properly Articles, than any thing else, and as such should be considered in Universal Grammar. Thus when we say, this Picture I approve, but that I dislike, what do we perform by the help of these Definitives, but bring down the common Appellative to denote two Individuals, the one as the more near, the other as the more distant? So when we say, Some men are virtuous, but All men are mortal what is the natural Effect of this All and Some, but to define that Universality, and Particularity, which would remain indefinite, were we to take them

them away? The same is evident in such Ch. I.
Sentences, as—Some substances have sensation; others want it—Choose any way of acting, and some men will find fault, &c.
For here some, other, and any, serve all of them to define different Parts of a
given Whole; Some, to denote a definite Part; Any, to denote an indefinite; and
Other, to denote the remaining Part, when a Part has been assumed already.
Sometimes this last Word denotes a large indefinite Portion, set in opposition to some
single, definite, and remaining Part, which receives from such Opposition no small de-
gree of heightening. Thus Virgil,

Excudent alii spirantia mollius era;
(Credo equidem) vivos ducent de marmore vultus;
Orabunt causas melius, calique meatus Describent radio, et surgentia sedera dicent:
Tu regere imperio populos, Romane, memento, &c. Æn. VI.

Nothing
Ch. I. Nothing can be stronger or more sublime, than this Antithesis; one \( \text{et} \) set as equal to many other \( \text{et} \)s taken together, and the Roman singly (for it is \( \text{Tu Romane} \), not \( \text{Vos Romani} \)) to all other Men; and yet this performed by so trivial a cause, as the just opposition of \( \text{Alii} \) to \( \text{Tu} \).

But here we conclude, and proceed to treat of Connectives.
Concerning Conneétives, and first those called Conjunctions.

**Connectives** are the subject of what follows; which, according as they connect either *Sentences* or *Words*, are called by the different Names of Conjunctions, or *Prepositions*. Of these Names, that of the *Preposition* is taken from a mere accident, as it commonly stands in connection before the Part, which it connects. The name of the *Conjunction*, as is evident, has reference to its *essential character*.

Of these two we shall consider the *Conjunction* first, because it connects, not *Words*, but *Sentences*. This is conformable to the Analysis, with which we began this inquiry*, and which led us, by parity

* Sup. p. 11, 12.
Ch. II. parity of reason, to consider Sentences themselves before Words. Now the Definition of a Conjunction is as follows—a Part of Speech, void of Signification itself, but so formed as to help Signification, by making two or more significant Sentences to be one significant Sentence (a).

(a) Grammarians have usually considered the Conjunction as connecting rather single Parts of Speech, than whole Sentences, and that too with the addition of like with like, Tense with Tense, Number with Number, Case with Case, &c. This Sanctius justly explodes. Conjunxit neque casus, neque alias partes orationis (ut imperiti docent) coniunxit, ipsae enim partes inter se coniunguntur—sed Conjunxit Orationes inter se coniunxit. Miner. L. III. c. 14. He then establishes his doctrine by a variety of examples. He had already said as much, L. I. c. 18. and in this he appears to have followed Scaliger, who had affectted the fame before him. Conjunxionis autem notionem veteres paullo insultiüs prodidero; neque enim, quod aiunt, partes alias coniunxit (ipsae enim partes per se inter se coniunguntur)—sed Conjunxiio est, quæ coniunxit Orationes plurès. De Cauf. Ling. Lat. c. 165.
This therefore being the general Idea of Ch. II. 

Conjunctions, we deduce their Species 

This Doctrine of theirs is confirmed by Apollonius, who in the several places, where he mentions the Conjunction, always considers it in Syntax as connecting Sentences, and not Words, though in his works now extant he has not given us its Definition. See L.I. c. 2. p. 14. L. II. c. 12. p. 124. L. III. c. 15. p. 234.

But we have stronger authority than this to support Scaliger and Sanctius, and that is Aristotle's Definition, as the Passage has been corrected by the best Critics and Manuscripts. A Conjunction, according to him, is φωνὴ ἄσημος, εἰς ὁλειόνων μὲν φωνῶν μίας, σηματικῶν δὲ, ποιητὴν περιτυχία μίαν φωνὴν σηματικὴν. An articulate Sound, devoid of Signification, which is so formed as to make one significant articulate Sound out of several articulate Sounds, which are each of them significant. Poet. c. 20. In this view of things, the one significant articulate Sound, formed by the Conjunction, is not the Union of two or more Syllables in one simple Word, nor even of two or more Words in one simple Sentence, but of two or more simple Sentences in one complex Sentence, which is considered as one, from that Concatenation of Meaning effected by the Conjunctions. For example, let us take the Sentence, which follows. If Men are by nature social, it is their Interest to be just, though it
Ch. II. in the following manner. Conjunctions, while they connect sentences, either connect also

were not so ordained by the Laws of their Country. Here are three Sentences. (1.) Men are by nature social. (2.) It is Man's Interest to be just. (3.) It is not ordained by the Laws of every Country that Man should be just. The first two of these Sentences are made one by the Conjunction, If; these, One with the third Sentence, by the Conjunction, Tho'; and the three, thus united, make that ἕν μία σημαίνειν, that one significant articulate Sound, of which Aristotle speaks, and which is the result of the conjunctive Power.

This explains a passage in his Rhetoric, where he mentions the same Subject. Ὅ γὰρ σύνεσιμος ἐν τοῖς τὰ τολλά, ὥστε ἐὰν εξηρεθῇ, δῆλον ὅτι τρισαυτὸν ἤσσαι τὸ ἐν τολλά. The Conjunction makes many, one; so that if it be taken away, it is then evident on the contrary that one will be many. Rhet. III. c. 12. His instance of a Sentence, di vested of its Conjunctions, and thus made many out of one, is, ἦλθον, ἀπήλθοσα, ἔδειμην, veni, occurri, rogavi, where by the way the three Sentences, resulting from this Dissolution, (for ἦλθον, ἀπήλθοσα, and ἔδειμην, are each of them, when unconnected, so many perfect sentences) prove that these are the proper Subjects of the Conjunction's connective faculty.

Ammianus
also their meanings, or not. For exam-ple: let us take these two Sentences—

Rome was enslaved—Caesar was ambitious—and connect them together by the Conjunction, Because. Rome was enslaved, because Caesar was ambitious. Here the Meanings, as well as the Sentences, appear to be connected. But if I say,—Manners must be reformed, or Liberty will be lost—here the Conjunction, or, though it join the

Ammonius's account of the use of this Part of Speech is elegant. Αἱ τῶν λόγων ο μὲν ὑπαρξίων μίαν συ-

μάς, οι κυρίως εἰς, ἁνάλογος ὡς ἐν τῇ μενίτισι τετ-

μητέρων έξύλων, οὗ διὰ τῶτο ἐν ἐρωμένω ἐν τῇ πλείονας ὑπαρξίων διήλου, ἦνα (lege διὰ) τινα δὲ σύνθεσιν ἀνω-

θαί τως δεκών, ἁνάλογέω τῇ νη τῇ ἐκ πολλών συνθέ-

μένη έξύλων, ὡπο δὲ τῶν γῆμομήν φαινομένω ἐκάστη τῇ 

φωσιν. Of Sentences that, which denotes one Existence simply, and which is strictly one, may be considered as analogous to a piece of Timber not yet severed, and called on this account One. That, which denotes several Existences, and which appears to be made one by some Conjunctive Particle, is analogous to a Ship made up of many pieces of Timber, and which by means of the nails has an apparent Unity. Am. in Lib. de Interpret. p. 54, 6.

R
Ch. II. the Sentences, yet as to their respective Meanings, is a perfect Disjunctive. And thus it appears, that though all Conjunctions conjoin Sentences, yet with respect to the Sense, some are Conjunctive, and some Disjunctive; and hence (b) it is that we derive their different Species.

The Conjunctions, which conjoin both Sentences and their Meanings, are either Copulatives, or Continuatives. The principal Copulative in English is, And. The Continuatives are, If, Because, Therefore, That, &c. The Difference between these is this—The Copulative does no more than barely couple Sentences, and is therefore applicable to all Subjects, whose Natures are not incompatible. Continuatives, on the contrary, by a more intimate connection, consolidate Sen-

(b) Thus Scaliger. Aut ergo Sensum conjungunt, ac Verba; aut Verba tantum conjungunt, Sensum vero disjungunt. De C. L. Lat. c. 167.
Sentences into one continuous Whole, and Ch. II. are therefore applicable only to Subjects, which have an essential Co-incidence.

To explain by examples—it is no way improper to say, Lysippus was a Statuary, AND Priscian was a Grammarian—The Sun shineth, AND the Sky is clear—because these are things that may co-exist, and yet imply no absurdity. But it would be absurd to say, Lysippus was a Statuary, BECAUSE Priscian was a Grammarian; tho' not to say, the Sun shineth, BECAUSE the Sky is clear. The Reason is, with respect to the first, the Co-incidence is merely accidental; with respect to the last, it is essential, and founded in nature. And so much for the Distinction between Copulatives and Continuatives (c).

As

(c) Copulativa est, quae copulat tam Verba, quam Sensum. Thus Priscian, p. 1026. But Scaliger is more explicit—Si Sensum conjungunt (conjunctiones sc.) aut neceссariis,
Ch. II. As to Continuatives, they are either Suppositive, such as, If; or Positive, such as, Because, Therefore, As, &c. Take Examples of each—you will live happily, if you live honestly—you live happily, because you live honestly. The Difference between these Continuatives is this—The Suppositives denote Conneélion, but assert not actual Existence; the Positives imply both the one and the other (d).

Further

cessario, aut non necessario: & si non necessario, tum sunt Copulatives, &c. De C. Ling. Lat. c. 167. Priscian's own account of Continuatives is as follows. Continuatives sunt, quae continuationem & consequentiam rerum significant—ibid. Scaliger's account is—caussam aut praefituunt, aut subdunt. Ibid. c. 168. The Greek name for the Copulative was Συνατίνωψ, &c.; for the Continuative, ευνατίνωψ; the Etymologies of which words justly distinguish their respective characters.

(d) The old Greek Grammarians confined the name Ευνατίνωψ, and the Latins that of Continuatives to those Con-
Further than this, the Positives above Ch. II. mentioned are either CAUSAL, such as, BECAUSE, SINCE, AS, &c. or COLLECTIVE, such as, THEREFORE, WHEREFORE, THEN, &c. The Difference between these is this—the CAUSALS subjoin Causes to Effects—The Sun is in Eclipse, BE-

Conjunctions, which we have called Suppositive or Conditional, while the Positive they called ἡ συνεπεικότης, or Subcontinuative. They agree however in describing their proper Characters. The first according to Gaza are, ὅπερ έπιέν μὲν ο, ἀκολούθιαν δὲ τινά ἐν τάξιν ἡ-λάντες—L. IV. Priscian says, they signify to us, quas eos ordinatio & natura rerum, cum dubitatione aliquá essentia rerum—p. 1027. And Scaliger says, they con-
join sine subsistentiā necessariā; potest enim subsistere & non subsistere; utrumque enim admittunt. Ibid. c. 168. On the contrary of the Positive, or ἡ συνεπεικότης (to use his own name) Gaza tells us, ὅτι έπιέν μετά τάξιν ομάδων έτοιμη—And Priscian says, causam continuationis offendunt consequentem cum essentia rerum—And Scaliger, non ex hypothesi, sed ex eo, quod subsistit, conjungunt. Ibid.
Ch. II. BECAUSE the Moon intervenes—The Collectives subjoin Effects to Causes—The Moon intervenes, THEREFORE the Sun is in Eclipse. Now we use Causals in those instances, where, the Effect being conspicuous, we seek its Cause; and Collectives, in Demonstrations, and Science properly so called, where the Cause being known

It may seem at first somewhat strange, why the Positive Conjunctions should have been considered as Subordinate to the Suppositive, which by their antient Names appears to have been the fact. Is it, that the Positive are confined to what actually is; the Suppositive extend to Possibles, nay even as far as to Impossibles? Thus it is false to affirm, As it is Day, it is Light, unless it actually be Day. But we may at midnight affirm, If it be Day, it is Light, because the, If, extends to Possibles also. Nay we may affirm, by its help (if we please) even Impossibles. We may say, If the Sun be cubical, then is the Sun angular; If the Sky fall, then shall we catch Larks. Thus too Scaliger upon the same occasion—amplitudinem Continuativa percipi ex eo, quod etiam impossibile aliquando praefupponit. De C. L. Lat C. 168. In this sense then the Continuative, Suppositive or Conditional Conjunction is (as it were) superior to the Positive, as being of greater latitude in its application.
known first, by its help we discern consequences (e).

All these Continuatives are resolvable into Copulatives. Instead of, *Because it is Day, it is light*, we may say, *It is Day, and it is Light*. Instead of, *If it be Day, it is Light, we may say, It is at the same time necessary to be Day, and to be Light*. and so in other instances. The reason is, that the Power of the Copulative extends to all connections, as well to the essential, as to the casual or fortuitous. Hence therefore the Continuative may be resolved into a Copulative and something more, that is to say, into a Copulative implying an essential Co-incidence (f) in the Subjects conjoined.

R 4

(e) The Latins called the Causals, *Causales* or *Causativae*; the Collectives, *Collectivae* or *Illativae*: The Greeks called the former *'AitioLOGIHOI*, and the latter *SUKLOGIHOI*.

(f) *Resolvuntur autem in Copulativas omnes haec, propertea quod Causa cum Effectu Suae natura conjuncta est*. Scal. de C. L. I. Lat. c. 169.
Ch. II. As to Causal Conjunctions (of which we have spoken already) there is no one of the four Species of Causes, which they are not capable of denoting: for example, the Material Cause—The Trumpet sounds, because it is made of Metal—The formal—The Trumpet sounds, because it is long and hollow—The efficient—The Trumpet sounds, because an Artist blows it—The final—The Trumpet sounds, that it may raise our courage. Where it is worth observing, that the three first Causes are express by the strong affirmation of the Indicative Mode, because if the Effect actually be, these must of necessity be also. But the last Cause has a different Mode, namely, the Contingent or Potential. The Reason is, that the Final Cause, tho' it may be first in Speculation, is always last in Event. That is to say, however it may be the End, which set the Artist first to work, it may still be an End beyond his Power to obtain, and which
which like other Contingents, may either Ch. II. happen, or not (g). Hence also it is con-
ected by Conjunctions of a peculiar kind, such as, That, i°u, Ut, &c.

The Sum is, that all Conjunctions, which connect both Sentences and their Mean-
ings, are either Copulative, or Conti-
uative; the Continuatives are either Conditional, or Positive; and the Positives are either Causal or Collective.

And now we come to the Disjunc-
tive Conjunctions, a Species of Words which bear this contradictory Name, be-
cause, while they disjoin the Sense, they conjoin the Sentences (h).

With

---

(g) See B. I. c. 8. p. 142. See also Vol. I. Note VIII. p. 271. For the four Causes see Vol. I. Note XVII. p. 280.

(h) Οι δὲ διαζευγίοι τὰ διαζευγμένα συνιθέοι, καὶ τῷ πράγματον ἀπὸ πράγματος, τῷ πρόσωπον ἀπὸ πρό-
σωπα διαζευγμὐντες, τὴν Ὀπάσῳ ἐπισυνάδω. Goxe Gram,
Ch. II. With respect to these we may observe, that as there is a Principle of Union diffused throughout all things, by which this Whole is kept together, and preserved from Dissipation; so there is a Principle of Diversity diffused in like manner, the Source of Distinction, of Number, and of Order. (i).

Now

Gram. L. IV. Disjunctīvē sunt, quae, quamvis dīctiōnes conjungant, senfium tamen disjunctum habent. Prisc. L. XVI. p. 1029. And hence it is, that a Sentence connected by Disjunctives, has a near resemblance to a simple negative Truth. For though this as to its Intellecution be disjunctive (its end being to disjoin the Subject from the Predicate) yet as it combines Terms together into one Proposition, it is as truly synthetical, as any Truth, that is affirmative. See Chap. I. Note (b). P. 3.

(i) The Diversity, which adorns Nature, may be said to heighten by degrees, and as it passes to different Subjects, to become more and more intense. Some things only differ, when considered as Individuals, but if we recur to their Species, immediately lose all Distinction: such for instance are Socrates and Plato. Others differ as to Species, but as to Genus are the same: such are
Now it is to express in some degree the Ch. II. Modifications of this Diversity, that Disjunctive Conjunctions seem first to have been invented.

Of these Disjunctives, some are Simple, some Adversative—Simple, as when we say, either it is Day, or it is 

are Man and Lion. There are others again, which differ as to Genus, and co-incide only in those transcendental Comprehensions of Ens, Being, Existence, and the like: such are Quantities and Qualities, as for example an Ounce, and the Colour, White. Lastly all Being whatever differs, as Being, from Non-being.

Farther, in all things different, however moderate their Diversity, there is an appearance of Opposition with respect to each other, in as much as each thing is it self, and not any of the rest. But yet in all Subjects this Opposition is not the same. In Relatives, such as Greater and Less, Double and Half, Father and Son, Cause and Effect, in these it is more striking, than in ordinary Subjects, because these always shew it, by necessarily inferring each other. In Contraries, such as Black and White, Even and Odd, Good and Bad, Virtuous
Ch. II. is Night—Adverfative, as when we say, It is not Day, but it is Night. The Difference between these is, that the simple do no more, than merely disjoin; the Adverfative disjoin, with an Opposition concomitant. Add to this, that the Adverfative are definite; the Simple, indefinite. Thus when we say, The Number Three is not an

Virtuous and Vitious, in these the Opposition goes still farther, because these not only differ, but are even destructive of each other. But the most potent Opposition is that of Ἀνθρώπος, or Contradiction, when we oppose Proposition to Proposition, Truth to Falsity, affecting of any Subject, either it is, or is not. This indeed is an Opposition, which extends itself to all things, for every thing conceivable must needs have its Negative, though multitudes by nature have neither Relatives, nor Contraries.

Besides these Modes of Diversity, there are others that deserve notice; such for instance, as the Diversity between the Name of a thing, and its Definition; between the various Names, which belong to the same thing, and the various things, which are denoted by the same Name; all which Diversities upon occasion become a Part of our Discourse. And so much, in short, for the Subject of Diversity.
an even Number, but an odd, we not only Ch. II.
disjoin two opposite Attributes, but we de-
finately affirm one, and deny the other.
But when we say, The Number of the Stars
is either even or odd, though we assert
one Attribute to be, and the other not to
be, yet the Alternative notwithstanding is
left indefinite. And so much for simple
Disjunctives (k).

As

(k) The simple Disjunctive \( \mu \), or \( Vel \), is mostly used
indefinitely, so as to leave an Alternative. But when it
is used definitely, so as to leave no Alternative it is then
a perfect Disjunctive of the Subsequent from the Pre-
vious, and has the same force with \( \dot{e} \), or, \( Et non. \)
It is thus Gaza explains that Verse of Homer.

\[ \beta\lambda\omicron\upsilon \varepsilon \gamma\nu \lambda\alpha\omicron \sigma\omicron \upsilon \iota\omicron \mu\mu\nu\varepsilon\alpha\iota \varepsilon \upsilon \varepsilon \nu \iota \chi \iota \iota \upsilon \iota \alpha \iota . \]

That is to say, I desire the people should be saved, and
not be destroyed, the Conjunction \( \alpha \) being \( \alpha\nu\alpha\iota\iota\iota\iota \chi\iota \iota \iota \iota \iota \varepsilon \),
or sublative. It must however be confess, that this Verse
is otherwise explained by an Ellipsis, either of \( \mu\varepsilon\alpha\lambda\omicron \upsilon \),
or \( \alpha\upsilon\tau\iota \varepsilon \), concerning which see the Commentators.
Ch. II. As to Adversative Disjunctives, it has been said already that they imply Opposition. Now there can be no Opposition of the same Attribute, in the same Subject, as when we say, Nireus was beautiful; but the Opposition must be either of the same Attribute in different Subjects, as when we say, Brutus was a Patriot, but Caesar was not—or of different Attributes in the same Subject, as when we say, Gorgias was a Sophist, but not a Philosopher—or of different Attributes in different Subjects, as when we say, Plato was a Philosopher, but Hippias was a Sophist.

The Conjunctions used for all these purposes may be called Absolute Adversatives.

But there are other Adversatives, besides these; as when we say, Nireus was more beautiful, than Achilles—Virgil was
As great a Poet, as Cicero was an Orator. Ch. II.
The Character of these latter is, that they go farther than the former, by marking not only Opposition, but that Equality or Excess, which arises among Subjects from their being compared. And hence it is they may be called Adversatives of Comparison.

Besides the Adversatives here mentioned, there are two other Species, of which the most eminent are unless and altho'. For example—Troy will be taken, unless the Palladium be preserved—Troy will be taken, altho' Hector defend it. The Nature of these Adversatives may be thus explained. As every Event is naturally allied to its Cause, so by parity of reason it is opposed to its Preventive. And as every Cause is either adequate (1) or in-adequate (in-adequate,

(1) This Distinction has reference to common Opinion, and the form of Language, consonant thereto. In strict metaphysical truth, No Cause, that is not adequate, is any Cause at all.
Ch. II. quate, when it endeavours, without being effectual) so in like manner is every Preventive. Now adequate Preventives are express by such Adversatives, as unless—Troy will be taken, unless the Palladium be preserved; that is, This alone is sufficient to prevent it. The In-adequate are express by such Adversatives, as altho'—Troy will be taken, altho' Hector defend it; that is, Hector's Defence will prove in-effectual.

The Names given by the old Grammarians to denote these last Adversatives, appear not sufficiently to express their Natures (m). They may be better perhaps called Adversatives Adequate, and In-adequate.

And thus it is that all Disjunctives, that is Conjunctions, which conjoin Sentences,

(m) They called them for the most part, without sufficient Distinction of their Species, Adversatives, or Ἴνστιματίνοι.
Book the Second.

Tences, but not their Meanings, are either Ch. II. Simple or Adversative; and that all Adversatives are either Absolute or Comparative; or else Adequate or In-aquate.

We shall finish this Chapter with a few miscellany Observations.

In the first place it may be observed, through all the Species of Disjunctives, that the same Disjunctive appears to have greater or less force, according as the Subjects, which it disjoins, are more or less disjoined by Nature. For example, if we say, Every Number is even, or odd—Every Proposition is true, or false—nothing seems to disjoin more strongly than the Disjunctive, because no things are in Nature more incompatible than the Subjects. But if we say, That Object is a Triangle, or Figure contained under three right lines—the (or) in this case hardly seems to disjoin, or indeed to do more, than distinctly to express the Thing, first by its Name,
Ch. II. And so much for Conjunctions, their Genus, and their Species.

the rest, should have their works filled with Particles of all kinds, and with Conjunctions in particular; while in the modern polite works, as well of ourselves as of our neighbours, scarce such a Word as a Particle, or Conjunction is to be found. Is it, that where there is Connection in the Meaning, there must be Words had to connect; but that where the Connection is little or none, such ConneCtives are of little use? That Houses of Cards, without cement, may well answer their end, but not those Houses, where one would chuse to dwell? Is this the Cause? or have we attained an Elegance, to the Antients unknown?

Venimus ad summam fortunae, &c.
Concerning those Connectives, called Prepositions.

Prepositions by their name express their Place, but not their Character. Their Definition will distinguish them from the former Connectives. A Preposition is a Part of Speech, devoid itself of Signification, but so formed as to unite two Words that are significant, and that refuse to coalesce or unite of themselves (a).

This

(a) The Stoic Name for a Preposition was Προθετικὸς Συνδέσμος, Prepositiva Conjunction, a Prepositive Conjunction. Ὑπερ μὲν ἐν τῇ κατὰ τὰς ἄλλας παραβῆσις ἢ προθετικὰς συνδέσμιν παραλληλοσύνης φύσις περιπτεροειδής, αὐτὸς ἤμιν εἰς ἣν ἢ αὐτοματῶς ἐνεπτυκτὰ συνδέσμος τοῖς Στοικοῖς τῇ καλεσθαι αὐτὸς Προθετικὸς Συνδέσμος. Now in what manner even in other applications (besides the present) Prepositions give proof of their Conjunctive Syntax, we have mentioned already; whence too, the Stoics took
Ch. III. This connective Power, (which relates to Words only, and not Sentences) will be better understood from the following Speculations.

Some things coalesce and unite of themselves; others refuse to do so without help, and as it were compulsion. Thus in Works of Art, the Morter and the Stone coalesce of themselves; but the Wainscot and the Wall not without Nails and Pins. In nature this is more conspicuous. For example; all Quantities, and Qualities coalesce immediately with their Substances. Thus it is we say, a fierce Lion, a vast Mountain; and from this Natural Concord of Subject and Accident, arises the Grammatical Concord of Substantive and Adjective. In like

took occasion to call them Prepositive Conjunctions. Apollon. L. IV. c. 5. p. 313. Yet is this in fact rather a descriptive Sketch, than a complete Definition, since there are other Conjunctions, which are Prepositive as well as these. See Gaz. L. IV. de Preposit. Prisc. L. XIV. p. 983.
like manner Actions coalesce with their Agents, and Passions with their Patients. Thus it is we say, Alexander conquers; Darius is conquered. Nay, as every Energy is a kind of Medium between its Agent and Patient, the whole three, Agent, Energy, and Patient, coalesce with the same facility; as when we say, Alexander conquers Darius. And hence, that is from these Modes of natural Coalescence, arises the Grammatical Regimen of the Verb by its Nominative, and of the Accusative by its Verb. Farther than this, Attributives themselves may be most of them characterized; as when we say of such Attributives as ran, beautiful, learned, he ran swiftly, she was very beautiful, he was moderately learned, &c. And hence the Coalescence of the Adverb with Verbs, Participles, and Adjectives.

The general Conclusion appears to be this. "Those Parts of Speech unite of themselves in Grammar, whose original Archetypes unite of them-

"
Ch. III. "themselves in Nature." To which we may add, as following from what has been said, that the great Objects of Natural Union are Substance and Attribute. Now tho' Substances naturally co-incide with their Attributes, yet they absolutely refuse doing so, one with another (b). And hence those known Maxims in Physics, that Body is impenetrable; that two Bodies cannot possess the same place; that the same Attribute cannot belong to different Substances; &c.

From these Principles it follows, that when we form a Sentence, the Substantive without difficulty co-incides with the Verb, from the natural Co-incidence of Substance and Energy—The Sun warmeth. So likewise the Energy with the Subject, on which

(b) Causa, pretter quam duo Substantiva non ponuntur sine copulâ, e Philosophiâ petenda est: neque enim duo substantialiter unum esse poteft, fiant Substantia et Accident ; itaque non dicas, Cæsar, Cato pugnat. Scal. de Caus. Ling. Lat. c. 177.
which it operates—warmeth the Earth. So likewise both Substance and Energy with their proper Attributes.—The Splendid Sun,—genially warmeth—the fertile Earth. But suppose we were desirous to add other Substantives, as for instance, Air, or Beams. How would these co-incide, or under what Character could they be introduced? Not as Nominatives or Accusatives, for both those places are already filled; the Nominative by the Substance, Sun; the Accusative by the Substance, Earth. Not as Attributes to these last, or to any other thing; for Attributes by nature they neither are, nor can be made. Here then we perceive the Rise and Use of Prepositions. By these we connect those Substantives to Sentences, which at the time are unable to coalesce of themselves. Let us assume for instance a pair of these Connectives, Thro', and With, and mark their Effect upon the Substances here mentioned. The splendid Sun with his Beams genially
Ch. III. genially warmeth thro' the Air the fertile Earth. The Sentence, as before, remains intire and one; the Substantives required are both introduced; and not a Word, which was there before, is detruded from its proper place.

It must here be observed that most, if not all Prepositions seem originally formed to denote the Relations of Place (c). The reason is, this is that grand Relation, which Bodies or natural Substances maintain at all times one to another, whether they are contiguous or remote, whether in motion, or at rest.

It may be said indeed that in the Continuity of Place they form this Universe or

---

(c) Omne corpus aut movetur aut quiescit: quare opus fuit aliquà notà, quæ TO PÔT significaret, sive effet inter duo extrema, inter quæ motus sit, sive effet in altero extremorum, in quibus sit quies. Hinc eliciemus Prepositio-nis essentiam definitionem. Scal. de Caul. Ling. Lat. c. 152.
of visible Whole, and are made as Ch.III. much One by that general Comprehension, as is consistent with their several Natures, and specific Distinctions. Thus it is we have Prepositions to denote the contiguous Relation of Body, as when we say, Caius walked with a Staff; the Statue stood upon a Pedestal; the River ran over a Sand; others for the detached Relation, as when we say, He is going to Italy; the Sun is risen above the Hills; these Figs came from Turky. So as to Motion and Rest, only with this difference, that here the Preposition varies its character with the Verb. Thus if we say, that Lamp hangs from the Ceiling, the Preposition, From, assumes a Character of Quiescence. But if we say, that Lamp is falling from the Ceiling, the Preposition in such case assumes a Character of Motion. So in Milton,

—To support uneasie Steps
Over the burning Marle—Par. L. I.

Here over denotes Motion.

Again
But though the original use of Prepositions was to denote the Relations of Place, they could not be confined to this Office only. They by degrees extended themselves to Subjects incorporeal, and came to denote Relations, as well intellectual as local. Thus, because in Place he, who is above, has commonly the advantage over him, who is below, hence we transfer over and under to Dominion and Obedience; of a King we say, he ruled over his People; of a common Soldier, he served under such a General. So too we say, with Thought; without Attention; thinking over a Subject; under Anxiety; from Fear; out of Love; through Jealousy, &c. All which instances, with many others of like kind,
kind, shew that the first Words of Men, Ch. III. like their first Ideas, had an immediate reference to sensible Objects, and that in after-days, when they began to discern with their Intellecit, they took those Words, which they found already made, and transferred them by metaphor to intellectual Conceptions. There is indeed no Method to express new Ideas, but either this of Metaphor, or that of Coining new Words, both which have been practised by Philosophers and wise Men, according to the nature, and exigence of the occasion (d).

(d) Among the Words new coined we may ascribe to Anaxagoras, Ομοιομέλεια; to Plato, Ποιότης; to Cicero, Qualitas; to Aristotle, Εὐελεξεῖα; to the Stoics, Οὐτίς, κεφατις, and many others.—Among the Words transferred by Metaphor from common to special Meanings, to the Platonics we may ascribe Ἐξεῖα; to the Pythagoreans and Peripatetics, Κατηγορία, and Κατηγορεῖν; to the Stoics, Κατάληψις, ὑπόληψις, καθόκου; to the Pyrrhonists, Ἐξεῖα, ἐνδεχεται, ἐπίχα, &c.

And
In the foregoing use of Prepositions, we have seen how they are applied ἄρα ἀρκεστίν, by way of juxta-position, that is to say, where they are prefixed to a Word, with-

And here I cannot but observe, that he who pretends to discuss the Sentiments of any one of these Philosophers, or even to cite and translate him (except in trite and obvious Sentences) without accurately knowing the Greek Tongue in general; the nice differences of many Words apparently synonymous; the peculiar Stile of the Author whom he presumes to handle; the new coined Words, and new Significations given to old Words, used by such Author, and his Sect; the whole Philosophy of such Sect, together with the Connections and Dependencies of its several Parts, whether Logical, Ethical, or Physical;—He I say, that, without this previous preparation, attempts what I have said, will shoot in the dark; will be liable to perpetual blunders; will explain, and praise, and censure merely by chance; and though he may possibly to Fools appear as a wise Man, will certainly among the wise ever pass for a Fool. Such a Man’s Intellect comprehends antient Philosophy, as his Eye comprehends a distant Prospect. He may see perhaps enough, to know Mountains from Plains, and Seas from Woods; but for an accurate discernment of particulars, and their character, this without farther helps, it is impossible he should attain.
without becoming a Part of it. But they may be used also by way of Composition, that is, they may be prefixed to a Word, so as to become a real Part of it. Thus in Greek we have Ἐπίγαθεω, in Latin, Intelligere, in English, to Understand. So also, to foretel, to overact, to undervalue, to outgo, &c. and in Greek and Latin, other Instances innumerable. In this case the Prepositions commonly transfuse something of their own Meaning into the Word, with which they are compounded; and this imparted Meaning in most instances will be found ultimately resolvable into some of the Relations of Place, as used either in its proper or metaphorical acceptation.

Lastly,

(e) See Gaz. Gram. L. IV. Cap. de Prepositione.

(f) For example, let us suppose some given Space. E & Ex signify out of that Space; Per, through it, from beginning to end; In, within it; Sub, under it. Hence
Lastly, there are times, when Prepositions totally lose their connective Nature, being.

Hence then E and Per in composition augment; Enormis, something not simply big, but big in excess; something got out of the rule, and beyond the measure; Dico, to speak; Edico, to speak out; whence Edictum, an Edict, something so effectually spoken, as all are supposed to hear, and all to obey. So Terence,

*Dico, Edico vobis*—Eun. V. 5. 20.

which (as Donatus tells us in his Comment) is an "Auctor. Fari, to speak; Effari, to speak out—hence Effatum, an Axiom, or self-evident Proposition, something addressed as it were to all men, and calling for universal Assent. Cic. Acad. II. 29. Per magnus, Perutilis, great throughout, useful through every part.

On the contrary, In and Sub diminish and lessen. Injustus, Iniquus, unjust, inequitable, that lies within Justice and Equity, that reaches not so far, that falls short of them; Subniger, blackish; Subrubicundus, reddish; tending to black, and tending to red, but yet under the standard, and below perfection.

Emo originally signified to take away; hence it came to signify to buy, because he, who buys, takes away his purchase. Inter, Between, implies Discontinuance,
being converted into Adverbs, and used in Ch.III.
Syntax accordingly. Thus Homer,

—Γέλασε δὲ χαῖσα τῷ ξῆσαι.
—And Earth smil’d all around.
Iλ. T. 362.

But of this we have spoken in a preceding
Chapter (g). One thing we must however observe, before we finish this Chap-
ter, which is, that whatever we may be
told of Cases in modern Languages,
there are in fact no such things; but their
force and power is exprest by two Me-
thods,

ance, for in things continuous there can nothing lie
between. From these two comes, Interimo, to kill,
that is to say, to take a Man away in the midst of Life,
by making a Discontinuance of his vital Energy. So also
Perimo, to kill a Man, that is to say, to take him away
thoroughly; for indeed what more thorough taking
away can well be supposed? The Greek Verb, ἀνασθεῖν,
and the English Verb, To take off, seem both to carry
the same allusion. And thus it is that Prepositions be-
come Parts of other Words.

(g) See before p. 205.
Ch. IV. thods, either by Situation, or by Prepositions; the Nominative and Accusative Cases by Situation; the rest, by Prepositions. But this we shall make the Subject of a Chapter by itself, concluding here our Inquiry concerning Prepositions.
C H A P. IV.

Concerning Cases.

As Cases, or at least their various Powers, depend on the knowledge partly of Nouns, partly of Verbs, and partly of Prepositions; they have been reserved, till those Parts of Speech had been examined and discussed, and are for that reason made the Subject of so late a Chapter, as the present.

There are no Cases in the modern Languages, except a few among the primitive Pronouns, such as I, and Me; Je, and Moy; and the English Genitive, formed by the addition of s, as when from Lion, we form Lion's; from Ship, Ship's. From this defect however we may be enabled to discover in some instances what a Case is, the Periphrasis, which supplies
plies its place, being the Café (as it were) unfolded. Thus Equi is analized into Du Cheval, Of the Horse; Equo into Au Cheval, To the Horse. And hence we see that the Genitive and Dative Cases imply the joint Power of a Noun and a Preposition, the Genitive's Preposition being _A, De, or Ex_, the Dative's Preposition being _Ad, or Versus_.

We have not this assistance as to the Accusative, which in modern Languages (a few instances excepted) is only known from its position, that is to say, by being subsequent to its Verb, in the collocation of the words.

The Vocative we pass over from its little use, being not only unknown to the modern Languages, but often in the antient being supplied by the Nominative.

The Ablative likewise was used by the Romans only; a Case they seem to have adopted
adopted to associate with their Prepositions, Ch.IV; as they had deprived their Genitive and Dative of that privilege; a Case certainly not necessary, because the Greeks do as well without it, and because with the Romans themselves it is frequently undistinguished.

There remains the Nominative, which whether it were a Case or no, was much disputed by the Antients. The Peripatetics held it to be no Case, and likened the Noun, in this its primary and original Form, to a perpendicular Line, such for example, as the line AB.

The Variations from the Nominative, they considered as if A B were to fall from its perpendicular, as for example, to A C, or A D. Hence then they only called these Variations, πΤΩΣΕΙΣ, Casus, Cases, or T 3 Fal-
Ch. IV. Fallings. The Stoics on the contrary, and the Grammarians with them, made the Nominative a Case also. Words they considered (as it were) to fall from the Mind, or discursive Faculty. Now when a Noun fell thence in its primary Form, they then called it \( \pi \tau \omega \zeta \iota \varepsilon \iota \sigma \vartheta \), \textit{Casus rectus}, an erect, or upright Case of Falling, such as \( A \) \( B \), and by this name they distinguished the Nominative. When it fell from the Mind under any of its variations, as for example in the form of a Genitive, a Dative, or the like, such variations they called \( \pi \tau \omega \zeta \iota \varepsilon \iota \sigma \nu \iota \nu \iota \iota \iota \), \textit{Casus obliqui}, oblique Cases, or side-long Fallings (such as \( A \) \( C \), or \( A \) \( D \)) in opposition to the other (that is \( A \) \( B \)) which was erect and perpendicular \( (a) \). Hence too Grammarians called the Method of enumerating the various Cases of a Noun, \( \kappa \lambda \iota \iota \varepsilon \iota \sigma \), \textit{Declinatio}, a \textit{Declension}, it

(a) See Ammon. in Libr. de Interpr. p. 35.
it being a sort of progressive Descent from Ch. IV; the Noun's upright Form thro' its various declining Forms; that is, a Descent from A B, to A C, A D, &c.

Of these Cases we shall treat but of four, that is to say, the Nominative, the Accusative, the Genitive, and the Dative.

It has been said already in the preceding Chapter, that the great Objects of natural Union are Substance and Attribute. Now from this Natural Concord arises the Logical Concord of Subject and Predicate, and the Grammatical Concord of Substantive and Attribute (b). These Converds in Speech produce Propositions and Sentences, as that previous Concord in Nature produces natural Beings. This being admitted,

(b) See before, p. 264.
Ch. IV. admitted, we proceed by observing, that when a Sentence is regular and orderly, Nature's Substance, the Logician's Subject, and the Grammarian's Substantive are all denoted by that Case, which we call the Nominative. For example, CAESAR pugnat, AEs fingitur, DOMUS ædificatur. We may remark too by the way, that the Character of this Nominative may be learnt from its Attributive. The Action implied in pugnat, shews its Nominative CAESAR to be an Active efficient Cause; the Passion implied in singitur, shews its Nominative AEs to be a Passive Subject, as does the Passion in ædificatur prove DOMUS to be an Effect.

As therefore every Attributive would as far as possible conform itself to its Substantive, so for this reason, when it has Cases, it imitates its Substantive, and appears as a Nominative also. So we find it in such instances as—CICERO EST ELOQUENS; VITIUM EST TURPE; HOMO EST ANIMAL,
ANIMAL, &c. When it has no Cases, Ch.IV. (as happens with Verbs) it is forced to content itself with such assimilations as it has, those of Number and Person*; as when we say, Cicero loquitur; nos loquimur; Homines loquuntur.

From what has been said, we may make the following observations—that as there can be no Sentence without a Substantive, so that Substantive, if the Sentence be regular, is always denoted by a Nominative—that on this occasion all the Attributives, that have Cases, appear as Nominatives also—that there may be a regular and perfect Sentence without any of the other Cases, but that without one Nominative at least, this is utterly impossible. Hence therefore we form its Character and Description—the Nominative is that Case, without which there can be no regular

* What sort of Number and Person Verbs have, see before, p. 170, 171.
Ch. IV. lar (c) and perfect Sentence. We are now to search after another Case.

When the Attributive in any Sentence is some Verb denoting Action, we may be assured the principal Substantive is some active efficient Cause. So we may call Achilles and Lysippus in such Sentences as Achilles vulneravit, Lysippus fecit. But though this be evident and clearly understood, the Mind is still in suspense, and finds its conception incomplete. Action, it well knows, not only requires some Agent, but it must have a Subject also to work on, and it must produce some Effect. It is then to denote one of these (that is, the Subject or the Effect) that the Authors of Language

(c) We have added regular as well as perfect, because there may be irregular Sentences, which may be perfect without a Nominative. Of this kind are all Sentences, made out of those Verbs, called by the Stoics Παράσυμβολα or Παρακατγεγράμματα, such as Σωκράτης μεταξίες, Socratem panicit, etc. See before, p. 120.
guage have defined the Accusative. Ch. IV. Achilles vulneravit Hectorem—here the Accusative denotes the Subject. Lysippus fecit statuas—here the Accusative denotes the Effect. By these additional Explanations the Mind becomes satisfied, and the Sentences acquire a Perfection, which before they wanted. In whatever other manner, whether figuratively, or with Prepositions, this Case may have been used, its first destination seems to have been that here mentioned, and hence therefore we shall form its Character and Description—the Accusative is that Case, which to an efficient Nominative and a Verb of Action subjoins either the Effect or the passive Subject. We have still left the Genitive and the Dative, which we investigate, as follows.

It has been said in the preceding Chapter (d), that when the Places of the Nominative

(d) See before, p. 265.
Ch. IV. **minative** and the **Accusative** are filled by proper Substantives, other Substantives are annexed by the help of Prepositions. Now, though this be so far true in the modern Languages, that (a very few instances excepted) they know no other method; yet is not the rule of equal latitude with respect to the **Latin** or **Greek**, and that from reasons which we are about to offer.

Among the various Relations of Substantives denoted by Prepositions, there appear to be two principal ones; and these are, the **Term** or **Point**, which something commences from, and the **Term or Point**, which something tends to. These Relations the **Greeks** and **Latins** thought of so great importance, as to distinguish them, when they occurred, by peculiar Terminations of their own, which express their force, without the help of a Preposition. Now it is here we behold the Rise of the antient Genitive, and Dative, the **Genitive** being formed to express all Relations com-
commencing from itself; the Dative, Ch. IV. all Relations tending to itself. Of this there can be no stronger proof, than the Analysis of these Cases in the modern Languages, which we have mentioned already (e).

It is on these Principles that they say in Greek—Δεξωμεὶ ΣΩΤ, διδωμι ΣΟΙ, Of thee I ask, To thee I give. The reason is, in requests the person requested is one whom something is expected from; in donations, the person presented, is one whom something passes to. So again—(f) Πιετόηται λίθε, it is made of Stone. Stone was the passive Subject, and thus it appears in the Genitive, as being the Term from, or out of which. Even in Latin, where the Syntax is more formal and strict, we read—

Implentur

(e) See before, p. 275. 276.
(f) Χρυσός πεποιημένος, κυλεφανδος, made of Gold and Ivory. So says Pausanias of the Olympian Jupiter, L. V. p. 400. See also Hom. Iliad. Σ. 574.
Ch. IV. Implentur veteris Bacchi, pinguisque se-
rinae. Virg.

The old Wine and Venison were the funds or stores, of or from which they were filled. Upon the same principles, Πίνω τὰ ὑδάτων, is a Phrase in Greek; and, Je bois de l'eau, a Phrase in French, as much as to say, I take some or a certain part, from or out of a certain whole.

When we meet in Language such Genitives as the Son of a Father; the Father of a Son; the Picture of a Painter; the Painter of a Picture, &c. these are all RELATIVES, and therefore each of them reciprocally a Term or Point to the other, from or out of which it derives its Eʃ-

ence, or at least its Intelleʃtion (g).

The

(g) All Relatives are said to reciprocate, or mutually infer each other, and therefore they are often express by this Case, that is to say, the Genitive. Thus Aristotle, Πάλαι ἐν τῷ περὶ τῷ περὶ οὐλολογούσα λέγεται, οἶδα.
The Dative, as it implies Tendency to, Ch. IV. is employed among its other uses to denote the Final Cause, that being the Cause to which all Events, not fortuitous, may be said to tend. It is thus used in the following instances, among innumerable others.

—TIBI suaveis dædala tellus
Submitit flores— Lucret.
—TIBI brachia contrahit ardens
Scorpios— Virg. G. I.
—TIBI serviat ultima Thule.
Ibid.

And so much for Cases, their Origin and Use; a Sort of Forms, or Terminations,

ὅνο ὅ δὲλξ δεσπότιν δὲλξ, χγ ὅ δεσπότις δῆλυ δεσπό-
τις λέγεται εἰκαί, χγ τὸ διπλάσιον ἥμισεδιπλάσιον,
χγ τὸ ἥμισὺ διπλασία ἥμισυ. Omnia vero, quae sunt ad
aliquid, referuntur ad ea, quæ reciprocantur. Ut servus
dicitur domini servus; et dominus, servi dominus; necnon
duplum, dimidii duplum; et dimidium, dupli dimidium.
Cat. C. VII.
tions, which we could not well pass over, from their great importance (b) both in
the Greek and Latin Tongues; but which however, not being among the Essentials
of Language, and therefore not to be found in many particular Languages, can
be hardly said to fall within the limits of our Inquiry.

(b) Annon et illud observatione dignum (licet nobis mod-
ernis spiritus nonnibil redundat) antiquas Lingusas ple-
nas declinationum, casuum, conjugationum, et similibum fu-
isse; modernas, his ferè desitutas, plurima per praeposi-
tiones et verba auxiliaria signiàre expedire? Sanè facile
quis conjiciat (utcunque nobis ipsi placeamus) ingenia pri-
orum seculorum nostriis fuísse multo acutiora et subtili-
Concerning Interjections—Recapitulation—Conclusion.

Besides the Parts of Speech before Ch. V. mentioned, there remains the Interjection. Of this Kind among the Greeks are "Ω, Φιφ, "Αι, &c. among the Latins, Ah! Heu! Hei! &c. among the English, Ah! Alas! Fie! &c. These the Greeks have ranged among their Adverbs; improperly, if we consider the Adverbial Nature, which always co-incides with some Verb, as its Principal, and to which it always serves in the character of an Attributive. Now Interjections co-incide with no Part of Speech, but are either uttered alone, or else thrown into a Sentence, without altering its Form, either in Syntax or Signification. The Latins seem therefore to have done better in † separating

† Vid Servium in Æneid XII. v. 486.
Ch. V., rating them by themselves, and giving them a name by way of distinction from the rest.

Should it be ask'd, if not Adverbs, what then are they? It may be answered, not so properly Parts of Speech, as adventitious Sounds; certain Voices of Nature, rather than Voices of Art, expressing those Passions and natural Emotions, which spontaneously arise in the human Soul, upon the View or Narrative of interesting Events (a).

"And

(a) Interjectiones a Græcis ad Adverbia referuntur, atque eos sequitur etiam Boethius. Et recte quidem de his, quando casum regunt. Sed quando orationi solam inferuntur, ut nota affectuæ, velut suspirii aut metis, vix videntur ad classem aliquam pertinere, ut quæ naturalis sint notÆ; non, aliærum voceum insitar, ex instituto significant. Volf. de Anal. L. I. c. I. Interjectio est vox affectuum mentis significans, ac citra verbi opem sententiam compleans. Ibid. c. 3. Restat clas. sium extrema, Interjectio. Hujus appellatio non simi-
"And thus we have found that ALL Ch. V.
"Words are either significant by
"themselves, or only significant,
U 2 "when

fisimilier se habet ac Conjunctionis. Nam cum haec dicatur
Conjunctionio, quia conjungat; Interjectionio tamen, non quia
interjacet, sed quia interjicitur, nomen accepit. Nec tamen
de eis ejus est, ut interjiciatur; cum non ser complet sen-
tentiam, nec rare ab ea incipiat oratio. Ibid. L. IV.
c. 28. Interjectionem non esse partem Orationis sic
ostendo: Quod naturale est, idem est apud omnes: Sed ge-
mitus & sigla lectitiae idem sunt apud omnes: Sunt igitur
naturales. Si vero naturales, non sunt partes Orationis.
Nam eae partes, secundum Aristotelem, ex instituto, non
naturae, debent conflare. Interjectionem Graeci Adverbiis
I. I. c. 2. Interjectionem Graeci inter Adverbia
ponunt, quoniam haec quaque vel adjungitur verbi, vel
verba ei subaudientur. Ut si dicam—Papae! quid vi-
deo?—vel per se—Papae!—etiam si non addatur, Miror;
habet in se ipsius verbi signifiesationem. Quae res maxime
ficit Romanarum artium Scriptores separatim hanc partem
ab Adverbiis accipere; quia videtur affectum habere in se
Verbi, et plenam nostris animi significacionem, etiam si
non addatur Verbum, demonstrare. Interjection tamen non
solum illa, qua dicitur Graeci απετλακτον, significant; sed etiam
voce, qua cuiusque passionis animi pulsus per exclama-
tionem interjiciuntur. Prisc. L. XV.
Ch. V. "when Associated—that those significant by themselves, denote either Sub-
stances or Attributes, and are called for that reason Substantives and
Attributes—that the Substantives are either Nouns or Pronouns—that
the Attributes are either Primary or Secondary—that the Primary At-
tributes are either Verbs, Participles, or Adjectives; the Secondary,
Adverbs—Again, that the Parts of
Speech, only significant when associated, are
either Definitives or Connectives
—that the Definitives are either Arti-
cular, or Pronominal—and that
the Connectives are either Prepositions
or Conjunctions."

And thus have we resolved Language, as a Whole into its constituent Parts, which was the first thing, that we proposed, in the course of this Inquiry (b).

But

(b) See before, p. 7.
But now as we conclude, methinks I Ch. V. hear some Objector, demanding with an air of pleasantry, and ridicule—"Is there no speaking then without all this trouble?" "Do we not talk every one of us, as well unlearned, as learned; as well poor Peasants, as profound Philosophers?" We may answer by interrogating on our part—Do not those same poor Peasants use the Levar and the Wedge, and many other Instruments, with much habitual readiness? And yet have they any conception of those Geometrical Principles, from which those Machines derive their Efficacy and Force? And is the Ignorance of these Peasants, a reason for others to remain ignorant; or to render the Subject a less becoming Inquiry? Think of Animals, and Vegetables, that occur every day—of Time, of Place, and of Motion—of Light, of Colours, and of Gravitation—of our very Senses and Intellect, by which we perceive every thing else—

U 3 That
That they are, we all know, and are perfectly satisfied—What they are, is a subject of much obscurity and doubt. Were we to reject this last question, because we are certain of the first, we should banish all philosophy at once out of the world (c).

But a graver objection now accosts us, "What (says he) is the utility? "Whence the profit, where the gain?"

Every science whatever (we may answer) has its use. Arithmetic is excellent.

(c) 'Ἀλλὰ ἐσὶ πολλὰ τῶν ὑδάτων, ἃ τὴν μὲν ὑπεξεῖν ἔχει γνωσιμακτάτην, ἀρνωσοτάτην δὲ τὴν ὑσίαν' ἀσπιρ ὑπὲ χώνεσι, καὶ ὁ τόπος, ἐτι δὲ μᾶλλον ὁ χρόνος. Ἐκάεσι γὰρ τότου τὸ μὲν εἶναι γνώσιμον καὶ ἀναμφίλεκτον τις δὲ ποτὲ ἐσιν αὐτῶν ἢ ἐσία, τῶν χαλεπωτάτων ὑφαίνει. Ἐπὶ δὲ δὴ τί τῶν τοιοτῶν καὶ ΨΥΧΗ το μὲν γὰρ εἶναι τί τῶν ὑψηλῶν, γνωσιμώτατον καὶ Φανερώτατον τι δὲ ποτὲ ἐσιν, εἰ ῥάδιον καταρκαθεῖν. Ἀλέξανδρ. Ἀρεσοδ. Πείς ΨΥΧΗ, Β'. Ρ. 142.
lent for the gauging of Liquors; Geometry, for the measuring of Estates; Astronomy, for the making of Almanacks; and Grammar perhaps, for the drawing of Bonds and Conveyances.

Thus much to the Sordid—If the Liberal ask for something better than this, we may answer and assure them from the best authorities, that every Exercise of the Mind upon Theorems of Science, like generous and manly Exercise of the Body, tends to call forth and strengthen Nature's original Vigour. Be the Subject itself immediately lucrative or not, the Nerves of Reason are braced by the mere Employ, and we become abler Actors in the Drama of Life, whether our Part be of the busier, or of the sedater kind.
Ch. V. Perhaps too there is a Pleasure even in Science itself, distinct from any End, to which it may be farther conducive. Are not Health and Strength of Body desirable for their own sakes, tho' we happen not to be fated either for Porters or Draymen; And have not Health and Strength of Mind their intrinsic Worth also, tho' not condemned to the low drudgery of fordid Emolument? Why should there not be a Good (could we have the Grace to recognize it) in the mere Energy of our Intellect, as much as in Energies of lower degree? The Sportsman believes there is Good in his Chace; the Man of Gaiety, in his Intrigue; even the Glutton, in his Meal. We may justly ask of these, why they pursue such things; but if they answer, they pursue them, because they are Good, it would be folly to ask them farther, why they pursue what is Good. It might well in such case be replied on their
their behalf (how strange soever it may Ch. V. at first appear) that if there was not some-
thing Good, which was in no respect useful, even things useful themselves could not possibly have existence. For this is in fact no more than to assert, that some things are Ends, some things are Means, and that if there were no Ends, there could be of course no Means.

It should seem then the Grand Question was, what is Good—that is to say, what is that which is desirable, not for something else, but for itself; for whether it be the Chace, or the Intrigue, or the Meal, may be fairly questioned, since Men in each instance are far from being agreed.

In the mean time it is plain from daily experience, there are infinite Pleasures, Amusements, and Diversions, some for Summer, others for Winter; some for Country
Ch. V. Country, others for Town; some, easy, indolent, and soft; others, boisterous, active, and rough; a multitude diversified to every taste, and which for the time are enjoyed as perfect Good, without a thought of any End, that may be further obtained. Some Objects of this kind are at times sought by all men, excepting alone that contemptible Tribe, who, from a love to the Means of life wholly forgetting its End, are truly for that reason called Mifers, or Miserable.

If there be supposed then a Pleasure, a Satisfaction, a Good, a Something valuable for its self without view to any thing farther, in so many Objects of the subordinate kind; shall we not allow the same praise to the sublimest of all Objects? Shall the Intellect alone feel no pleasures in its Energy, when we allow them to the grossest Energies of Appetite, and Sense? Or if the Reality of all Pleasures and Goods were
Book the Second.

were to be controverted, may not the In-Ch. V. Intellectual Sort be defended, as rationally as any of them? Whatever may be urged in behalf of the rest (for we are not now arraigning them) we may safely affirm of Intellectual Good, that it is "the Good of that Part, which is most excellent within us; that it is a Good accommodating to all Places and Times; which neither depends on the will of others, nor on the influence of external Fortune; that it is a Good, which decays not with decaying Appetites, but often rises in vigour, when those are no more (d)."

There is a Difference, we must own, between this Intellectual Virtue, and Moral Virtue. Moral Virtue, from its Employment, may be called more Human, as

(d) See Vol. I. p. 119, 120, &c.
Ch. V. as it tempers our Appetites to the purposes of human Life. But Intellectual Virtue may be surely called more Divine, if we consider the Nature and Sublimity of its End.

Indeed for Moral Virtue, as it it almost wholly conversant about Appetites, and Affections, either to reduce them natural ones to a proper Mean, or totally to expel the unnatural and vitious, it would be impious to suppose the Deity to have occasion for such an Habit, or that any work of this kind should call for his attention. Yet God Is, and Lives. So we are assured from Scripture it self. What then may we suppose the Divine Life to be? Not a Life of Sleep, as Fables tell us of Endymion. If we may be allowed then to conjecture with a becoming reverence, what more likely, than A perpetual Energy of the purest Intellect about the first, all-comprehensive
comprehensive Objects of Intel- Ch. V.
lection, which Objects are no other than that Intellect it- self? For in pure Intellection it holds the reverse of all Sensation, that the perceiver and thing per- ceived are always one and the same (ε).

It

(ε) 'Ειν ὑπὸ τοῦ ἐχεῖν, ὡς ἡμεῖς ὄντες, ὦ Θεὸς ἄει, Σαυμακέαι ἐι δὲ μᾶλλον, ἐτι Σαυμασιάτερον ἐχεῖ δὲ ὥδε, ἢ ζωὴ δὲ ὑπάρχειν ὡς ἐνεστεῖν, ζωὴ Ἐκεῖνος δὲ, ἢ ἐνεστεῖν ἐνεστεῖν δὲ ἡ καθ' αὐτὴν, ἐκεῖνος ζωὴ ἀφίση νη αἴιδιος. Ὑμεῖς δὲ τοῦ Θεοῦ ἐν δικά ζωῶν αἴιδιον, ἀφίσον ὡς ζωή νη αἴινυ συνεχῆς νη αἴιδιος ὑπάρχει παρ' Θεῷ, ὑπὸ ὕπο τοῦ ὦ Θεὸς. Τῶν μετὰ τὰ φυσικὰ μὲν ζ. ζ. ζ. It is remarkable in Scripture that God is peculiarly characterized as a Living God, in opposition to all false and imaginary Deities, of whom some had no pretensions to Life at all; others to none higher than that of Vegetables or Brutes; and the best were nothing better than illustrious Men, whose existence was circumscribed by the short period of Hu- manity.

To
Ch. V. It was Speculation of this kind concerning the Divine Nature, which induced one of the wisest among the Antients to believe—“That the Man, who could live in the pure enjoyment of his Mind, and who properly cultivated that divine Principle, was happiest in himself, and most beloved by the Gods. For if the Gods had any regard to what past among Men (as it appeared they had) it was probable they should rejoice in that which was most excellent, and by nature the most nearly allied to themselves; and, as this was Mind, that they should requite the Man, who most loved and honoured This, both from his regard to that which was dear

To the passage above quoted, may be added another, which immediately precedes it. Ἀυτῷ δὲ νοῦ ὁ νῦς ἀντὶ μετάληψιν τῷ νοτῷ νοτὸς γὰρ γίνεται, τιγκάνων ἐν νοοῦ ὅτε ΤΑΤΤΟΝ ΝΟΤΣ ΚΑΙ ΝΟΗΤΟΝ.
"dear to themselves, and from his act-Ch. V.
ing a Part, which was laudable and
right (f)."

And thus in all science there is something valuable for itself, because it contains within it something which is divine.

(f) Ηθιχ' Νικομαχ' τον Κ'. κιφ. ἡ.

End of the Second Book.
HERMES
OR A PHILOSOPHICAL INQUIRY
CONCERNING UNIVERSAL GRAMMAR.

BOOK III.

CHAP. I.
Introduction—Division of the Subject into its principal Parts.

SOME things the Mind performs thro' the Body; as for example, the various Works and Energies of Art. Others it performs without such Medium; as for example, when it thinks, and reasons, and concludes. Now tho' the Mind, in either case, may be called the Principle or Source, yet are these last X more
more properly its own peculiar Acts, as being immediately referable to its own innate Powers. And thus is Mind ultimately the Cause of all; of every thing at least that is Fair and Good.

Among those Acts of Mind more immediately its own, that of mental Separation may be well reckoned one. Corporeal Separations, however accurate otherwise, are in one respect incomplete, as they may be repeated without end. The smallest Limb, severed from the smallest Animalcule (if we could suppose any instrument equal to such dissection) has still a triple Extension of length, breadth, and thickness; has a figure, a colour, with perhaps many other qualities; and so will continue to have, tho' thus divided to infinity. But (a) the Mind surmounts all power of Concretion,

(a) Itaque Naturæ facienda est prorsus Solutio & Separatio; non per Ignem certe, sed per Mentem; tanquam ignem divinum. Bacon. Organ. Lib. II. 16.
Book the Third.

creation, and can place in the simplest Ch. I. manner every Attribute by itself; convex without concave; colour without superficies; superficies without Body; and Body without its Accidents; as distinctly each one, as tho' they had never been united.

And thus it is that it penetrates into the recesses of all things, not only dividing them, as Wholes, into their more conspicuous Parts, but persisting, till it even separate those Elementary Principles, which, being blended together after a more mysterious manner, are united in the minutest Part, as much as in the mightiest Whole (b).

Now if Matter and Form are among these Elements, and deserve perhaps to be esteemed as the principal among them, it may not be foreign to the Design of this Treatise, to seek whether these, or any things analogous to them, may be found in X 2 Speech

(b) See below, p. 312.
Ch. I. Speech or Language (c). This therefore we shall attempt after the following method.

(c) See before p. 2. 7. Matter and Form (in Greek ΣΛΗ and ΕΙΔΟΣ) were Terms of great import in the days of ancient Philosophy, when things were scrutinized rather at their beginning than at their end. They have been but little regarded by modern Philosophy, which almost wholly employs itself about the last order of Substance, that is to say, the tangible, corporeal or concrete, and which acknowledges no separations even in this, but those made by mathematical Instruments or Chemical Processes.

The original meaning of the Word ΣΛΗ, was Sylva, a Wood. Thus Homer,

—Τείμε δ’ ὰμεν μακρᾶ ΣΛΗ,
Ποσσίν ὅπ’ ἀβανάτοιοι Ποσειδάνως ιόντος.

As Neptune past, the Mountains and the Wood Trembled beneath the God’s immortal Feet.

Hence as Wood was perhaps the first and most useful kind of Materials, the Word "ΣΛΗ, which denoted it, came to be by degrees extended, and at length to denote Matter or Materials in general. In this sense Brass was called the "ΣΛΗ or Matter of a Statue; Stone, the "ΣΛΗ or Matter of a Pillar; and so in other instances. The Platonic Chalcidius, and other Authors
Every thing in a manner, whether natural or artificial, is in its constitution composed

Authors of the latter Latinity use *Sylva* under the same extended and comprehensive Signification.

Now as the Species of *Matter* here mentioned, (Stone, Metal, Wood, &c.) occur most frequently in common life, and are all nothing more than natural Substances or Bodies, hence by the Vulgar, *Matter* and *Body* have been taken to denote the same thing; *Material* to mean *Corporeal*; *Immaterial*, *Incorporeal*, &c. But this was not the Sentiment of Philosophers of old, by whom the Term *Matter* was seldom used under so narrow an acceptation. By these, every thing was called *Nature*, or *Matter*, whether corporeal or incorporeal, which was capable of becoming something else, or of being moulded into something else, whether from the operation of Art, of Nature, or a higher Cause.

In this sense they not only called *Brass* the "*γλυς* of a Statue, and Timber of a Boat, but Letters and Syllables they called the "*γλας* of Words; Words or simple Terms, the"*γλας* of Propositions; and Propositions themselves the"*γλας* of Syllogisms. The *Stoics* held all things out of our own power (*τὰ ἐν ἑαυτῷ*), such as Wealth and Poverty, Honour and Dishonour, Health.
Health and Sickness, Life and Death, to be the "

or Materials of Virtue or Moral Goodness, which had its

in a proper conduct with respect to all these,

(Vid. Arr. Epict. L. I. c. 29. Also Vol. the first of

these miscellaneous Treatises, p. 187, 309. M. Ant.

XII. 29. VII. 29. X. 18, 19. where the 'ληκών and

'Αριστοδè μες are opposed to each other). The Peripatetics,

tho' they expressly held the Soul to be ἀσώματος, or

Incorporeal, yet still talked of a Νεύς θλικός, a mate-

rial Mind or Intellect. This to modern Ears may pos-

sibly found somewhat harshly. Yet if we translate the

Words, Natural Capacity, and consider them as only
denoting that original and native Power of Intellection,

which being previous to all human Knowledge, is yet

necessary to its reception; there seems nothing then to

remain, that can give us offence. And so much for

the Idea of ΥΑΛΗ, or Matter. See Alex. Aphrod.
de Anim. p. 144. b. 145. Arift. Metaph. p. 121, 122,


As to ΕΙΔΟΣ, its original meaning was that of

Form or Figure, considered as denoting visible Sym-

metry, and Proposition; and hence it had its name from

Εἴδω to see, Beauty of person being one of the noblest,

and most excellent Objects of Sight. Thus Euripides,

Πολύτων μὲν Εἴδος ἄξιον ταχθυδός.
Fair Form to Empire gave the first pretence.

Now
mon, and belonging to many other things; Ch. I. and of something *Peculiar*, by which it is

Now as the *Form* or *Figure* of visible Beings tended principally to distinguish them, and to give to each its Name and Essence; hence in a more general sense, whatever of any kind (whether corporeal or incorporeal) was peculiar, essential, and distinctive, so as by its accession to any Beings, as to its "Tan or Matter, to mark them with a Character, which they had not before, was called by the Antients ΕΙΔΟΣ or *Form*. Thus not only the *Shape* given to the Brass was called the ΕΙΔΟΣ or *Form* of the Statue; but the *Proportion* assigned to the Drugs was the ΕΙΔΟΣ or *Form* of the Medicine; the *orderly Motion* of the human Body was the ΕΙΔΟΣ or *Form* of the Dance; the *just Arrangement* of the Propositions, the ΕΙΔΟΣ or *Form* of the Syllogism. In like manner the *rational and accurate Conduct* of a *wise and good man*, in all the various Relations and Occurrences of life, made that ΕΙΔΟΣ or *Form*, described by Cicero to his Son,—*Formam quidam ipsum, Marce fili, et tanquam faciem Honesti videes: quae, si oculis cerneretur, mirabiles amores (ut ait Plato) excitaret sapientia*, &c. De Offic. I.

We may go farther still—*the supreme Intelligence*, which passes thro' all things, and which is the same to our Capacities, as Light is to our Eyes,
Ch. I. is distinguished, and made to be its true and proper self.

Hence

this supreme Intelligence has been called \( \text{E} \text{I} \text{A} \text{O} \text{Σ} \text{E} \text{I} \text{A} \text{Ω} \text{N} \), the Form of Forms, as being the Fountain of all Symmetry, of all Good, and of all Truth; and as imparting to every Being those essential and distinctive Attributes, which make it to be itself, and not any thing else.

And so much concerning Form, as before concerning Matter. We shall only add, that it is in the uniting of these, that every thing generable begins to exist; in their separating, to perish and be at an end—that while the two co-exist, they co-exist not by juxta-position, like the stones in a wall, but by a more intimate Co-incidence, complete in the minutest part—that hence, if we were to persist in dividing any substance (for example Marble) to infinity, there would still remain after every section both Matter and Form, and these as perfectly united, as before the Division began—lastly, that they are both pre-existent to the Beings, which they constitute; the Matter being to be found in the world at large; the Form, if artificial, pre-existing within the Artificer, or if natural, within the supreme Cause, the Sovereign Artifist of the Universe,

—Pulchrum pulcherrimus ipse
Mundum mente gerens, similique in imagine formans.

Even
Hence Language, if compared according to this notion to the murmurs of a

Even without speculating so high as this, we may see among all animal and vegetable Substances, the Form pre-existing in their immediate generating Cause; Oak being the parent of Oak, Lion of Lion, Man of Man, &c.

Cicero's account of these Principles is as follows.

Matter.

Sed subjectam putant omnibus sine ulla specie, atque car- rentem omni illa qualitate (faciamus enim trahendo usitatius hoc verbum et tritius) materiam quandam, ex quâ omnia expressa atque efficià sint: (quæ tæta omnia ac-cipere possit, omnibusque modis mutari atque ex omni parte) eoque etiam interire, non in nihilum, &c. Acad. I. 8.

Form.

Sed ego sic statuo, nihil esse in ullo genere tam pulchrum, quo non pulchrior id fit, unde illud, ut ex or æ ali- quo, quasi imago, exprimatur, quod neque oculis, neque auribus, neque ullo sensu percipi poteñ: cogitatione tantum et mente complestimur.—Has rerum formas app- pellat Ideas ille non intelligendi solum, sed etiam dicendi gravissimus auctor et magister, Plato: casque gigni negat, et ait semper esse, ac ratione et intelligentiâ contineri: ca- ãera nasci, occidere, fluere, labi; nec diutius esse uno et
Ch. I. a Fountain, or the dashings of a Cataract, has in common this, that like them, it is a Sound. But then on the contrary it has in peculiar this, that whereas those Sounds have no Meaning or Signification, to Language a Meaning or Signification is essential. Again, Language, if compared to the Voice of irrational Animals, has in common this, that like them, it has a Meaning. But then it has this in peculiar to distinguish it from them, that whereas the Meaning of those Animal Sounds is derived from Nature, that of Language is derived, not from Nature, but from Compact (d).

From

eodem statu. Quidquid est igitur, de quo ratione et via disputetur, id est ad ultinam sui generis Formam spectimque redigendum. Cic. ad M. Brut. Orat.

(d) The Peripatetics (and with just reason) in all their definitions as well of Words as of Sentences, made it a part of their character to be significant πάντα ἐν ἐν πάντι, by Compact. See Aristot. de Interp. c. 2. 4. Boethius translates the Words πάντα ἐν ἐν πάντι, ad placem,
From hence it becomes evident, that Ch. I. Language, taken in the most comprehensive view, implies certain Sounds, having certain Meanings; and that of these two Principles, the Sound is as the Matter, common (like other Matter) to many different things; the Meaning as that peculiar and characteristic Form, by which the Nature or Essence of Language becomes complete.

*tum, or secundum placitum, and thus explains them in his comment—Secundum placitum vero est, quod secundum quandam positionem, placitumque ponentis aptatur; nullum enim nomen naturaliter constitutum est, neque unquam, sicut subjecta res a natura est, ita quoque a natura veniente vocabulo nuncupatur. Sed hominum genus, quod et ratione, et oratione vigeret, nomina posuit, eaque quibus libuit literis syllabisque conjungens, singulis subjectis rerum substantiis dedit. Boeth. in Lib. de Interpret. p. 308.
Upon the Matter, or common Subject of Language.

Ch. II. THE MATTER OF LANGUAGE comes first to be considered, a Subject, which Order will not suffer us to omit, but in which we shall endeavour to be as concise as we can. Now this MATTER is SOUND, and SOUND is that Sensation peculiar to the Sense of Hearing, when the Air hath felt a Percussion, adequate to the producing such Effect (a).

As

(a) This appears to be Prisian's Meaning when he says of a Voice, what is more properly true of Sound in general, that it is—

\[ \text{audibile aurium, id est, quod propriè auribus accidit.} \]

Lib. I p. 537.

The following account of the Stoics, which refers the cause of Sound to an Undulation in the Air propagated circularly, as when we drop a stone into a Cistern of water, seems to accord with the modern Hypothesis, and
As the Causes of this Percussion are Ch. II. various, so from hence Sound derives the Variety of its Species.

Farther, as all these Causes are either Animal or Inanimate, so the two grand Species of Sounds are likewise Animal or Inanimate.

There is no peculiar Name for Sound Inanimate; nor even for that of Animals, when made by the trambling of their Feet, the fluttering of their Wings, or any other Cause, which is merely accidental. But that,

and so be as plausible as any—'Ακοίηστος η, τῇ μεταξῇ τῇ τε φωνῇ τον ἀκοίηστον οίρος πιστίσθη γενε- ροπώς, εἰτα κατακαινίσε, ἵνα ἄκουση προσπίπτει- τος, ἢς κατατάσσεται εἰς τῷ ἑξωμοίῳ ἐδώρ κατὰ κόλινς ὑπὸ τὸ ἱμπαλάματι λατέ—Πορτα αὐδηρε, cum is, qui me- dius inter loquentem, et audientem est, aer verberatur or- biculariter, deinde agitatus auribus infini, quemadmedium et eis ferme aqua per orbem injeeto agitatur lapide. Diog. Laert. VII.
that, which they make by proper Organs, in consequence of some Sensation or inward Impulse, such Animal Sound is called a Voice.

As Language therefore implies that Sound called Human Voice; we may perceive that to know the Nature and Powers of the Human Voice, is in fact to know the Matter or common Subject of Language.

Now the Voice of Man, and it should seem of all other Animals, is formed by certain Organs between the Mouth and the Lungs, and which Organs maintain the intercourse between these two. The Lungs furnish Air, out of which the Voice is formed; and the Mouth, when the Voice is formed, serves to publish it abroad.

What these Vocal Organs precisely are, is not in all respects agreed by Philo-
Book the Third.

Sphers and Anatomists. Be this as it will, it is certain that the mere primary and simple Voice is completely formed, before ever it reach the Mouth, and can therefore (as well as Breathing) find a Passage thro' the Nose, when the Mouth is so far stoppt, as to prevent the least utterance.

Now pure and simple Voice, being thus produced, is (as before was observed) transmitted to the Mouth. Here then, by means of certain different Organs, which do not change its primary Qualities, but only superadd others, it receives the Form or Character of Articulation. For Articulation is in fact nothing else, than that Form or Character, acquired to simple Voice, by means of the Mouth and its several Organs, the Teeth, the Tongue, the Lips, &c. The Voice is not by Articulation made more grave or acute, more loud or soft (which are its primary Qualities) but it acquires to these Characters certain
Ch. II. certain others additional, which are perfectly adapted to exist along with them (b).

(b) The several Organs above mentioned not only serve the purposes of Speech, but those very different ones likewise of Mastication and Respiration; so frugal is Nature in thus aligning them double duty, and so careful to maintain her character of doing nothing in vain.

He, that would be informed, how much better the Parts here mentioned are framed for Discourse in Man, who is a Discursive Animal, than they are in other Animals, who are not so, may consult Aristotle in his Treatise de Animal. Part. Lib. II. c. 17. L. III. c. 1. 3. De Animá. L. II. c. 8. § 23, &c.

And here by the way, if such Inquirer be of a Genius truly modern, he may possibly wonder how the Philosopher, considering (as it is modestly phrased) the Age in which he lived, should know so much, and reason so well. But if he have any taste or value for antient literature, he may with much jufter cause wonder at the Vanity of his Contemporaries, who dream all Philosophy to be the Invention of their own Age, knowing nothing of those Antients still remaining for their perusal, tho' they are so ready on every occasion to give the preference to themselves.

The following account from Ammonius will shew whence the Notions in this chapter are taken, and what
The simplest of these new Characters are those acquired thro' the mere Openings of what authority we have to distinguish Voice from mere Sound; and articulate Voice from simple Voice.

Καὶ ὨΦΟΣ μὲν ἐστὶν ἀκρός αἰσθητή ἀκοῆς ἐξουσίων, ὅταν διὰ τῆς συσόλης τῆς θάρακος ἐνδειξάθηκεν καὶ τῆς συσκόμμασις ἐκπεπτικὴ ἄθρως τῆς καλωμευτικῆς τραχείας ἀόρατης, καὶ ἐπιθέως ἡ τε τῆς γραφημένης, ἡ δὲ τῆς ψυχῆς ἀποτελεῖ τῆς ἡχοῦ αἰσθητοὺς, κατὰ τινὰς ὀρκυν τῆς ψυχῆς ὑπὲρ ἐπὶ τῶν ἐμφανεῖσθαι πάντα τῶν ματικῶν καλωμένων ὀφάλην συμβαίνει. οὐκ ἂν ἦν καὶ συφύγγων τῆς γυλιτίκης, καὶ τῶν οὐκρατω, καὶ χαλκίων ριζῶν μὲν ΤΗΝ ΔΙΑΛΕΚΤΟΝ ἐν γραμμῆς διέτην, ριζῶν δὲ ΤΗΝ ἈΠΛΩΣ ΦΩΝΗΝ καὶ τῶν σωματικῶν ἀλλοποιῶν.—Estque Sonus, etsi aeris qui auditu pertinet: Vox autem est sonus, quem animans edit, cum thoracis compressionem aere attraheas a pulmone, elisis simul totus in arteriam, quam afferas vocant, et patatum, aut gurgulonem impingit, et ex etsi sonum quendam sensibilem pro animi quodam impetu perspici. Id quod in instrumentis qua quia insit, ideo ἐμπνευσάμενος a musicis dicatur, ut venit, ut in tibiis, ac fisculis contingit, cum lingua, dentes, labiaque ad loculam necessaria sint, ad vocem vero simpli- ceum non omnino conserant. Ammon. in Lib. de Intcrpr. p. 25. b. Vid. etiam Boerhaave Institut. Medic. Sect. 626. 630.
Ch. II. of the Mouth, as these Openings differ in giving the Voice a Passage. It is the Variety of Configurations in these Openings only, which gives birth and origin to the several Vowels; and hence it is they derive their Name, by being thus eminently Vocal (c), and easy to be sounded of themselves alone.

There are other articulate Forms, which the Mouth makes not by mere Openings, but by different Contacts of its different parts; such for instance, as it makes by the Junction of the two Lips, of the Tongue with

It appears that the Stoics (contrary to the notion of the Peripatetics) used the word ΦΩΝΗ to denote Sound in general. They defined it therefore to be—Τὸ ζῆνον ἀκούον ἀκοή, which justifies the definition given by Priscian, in the Note preceding. Animal Sound they defined to be—Αἵρ ὑπὸ ὅμοιός πεπληγμένος, Air Struck (and so made audible) by some animal impulse; and Human or Rational Sound they defined—Ἐξωρθος καὶ ἀπὸ διανοιας ἐκπεμπομένη, Sound articulate and derived from the discurse faculty. Diog. Laert. VII. 55. (c) ΦΩΝΗΕΝΤΑ.
with the Teeth, of the Tongue with the Ch. II, Palate, and the like.

Now as all these several Contacts, unless some Opening of the Mouth either immediately precede, or immediately follow, would rather occasion Silence, than to produce a Voice; hence it is, that with some such Opening, either previous or subsequent, they are always connected. Hence also it is, that the Articulations so produced are called Consonant, because they found not of themselves, and from their own powers, but at all times in company with some auxiliary Vowel (d).

There are other subordinate Distinctions of these primary Articulations, which to enumerate would be foreign to the design of this Treatise.

It is enough to observe, that they are all denoted by the common Name of Element (d) ΣΥΜΦΩΝΑ.
Ch. II. MENT (e), in as much as every Articulation of every other kind is from them derived, and into them resolved. Under their smallest Combination they produce a Syllable; Syllables properly combined produce a Word; Words properly combined produce a Sentence; and Sentences properly combined produce an Oration or Discourse.

And thus it is that to Principles apparently so trivial (f), as about twenty plain ele-

(e) The Stoic Definition of an Element is as follows—'Ἐστι ὁ σωματικός, ἐξ ὧν ἑπτὰ πᾶντα τὰ ἔνθισμα, καὶ ἐκ ὧν ἑξάκοτος ἀναλύεται. An Element is that, out of which, as their first Principle, things generated are made, and into which, as their last remains, they are resolved. Diog. Laert. VII. 176. What Aristotle says upon Elements with respect to the Subject here treated, is worth attending to—Φωνῆς σωματικῶς ἐκ· ὅς αὐτὸν ἐξ Φωνῆς, καί ἐκ διαφορὰς τοιούτοις ἀπαθώς ἐπεξερευνηθεῖ τυχαίον εἰς μερίτη εἰς ἄλλας Φωνῆς ἐτέρας τῷ ἐκείνῳ ἀντίποι. The Elements of articulate Voice are those things, out of which the Voice is compounded, and into which, as its last remains, it is divided: the Elements themselves being no farther divisible into other articulate Voices, differing in Species from them. Metaph. V. c. 3.

(f) The Egyptians paid divine Honours to the Inventor of Letters, and Regulator of Language, whom they
elementary Sounds, we owe that variety Ch. II. of articulate Voices, which have been sufficient to explain the Sentiments of so innumerable a Multitude, as all the present and past Generations of Men.

It

ey called Thruth. By the Greeks he was worshipped under the Name of Hermes, and represented commonly by a Head alone without other Limbs, standing upon a quadrilateral Basis. The Head itself was that of a beautiful Youth, having on it a Petasus, or Bonnet, adorned with two Wings.

There was a peculiar reference in this Figure to the ΕΡΜΗΣ ΛΟΓΙΟΣ, the Hermes of Language or Discourse. He possessed no other part of the human figure but the Head, because no other was deemed requisite to rational Communication. Words at the same time, the medium of this Communication, being (as Homer well describes them) ἐπεξ ἔσειντα, Winged Words, were represented in their Velocity by the Wings of his Bonnet.

Let us suppose such a Hermes, having the Front of his Basis (the usual place for Inscriptions) adorned with some old Alphabet, and having a Veil flung across, by which that Alphabet is partly covered. Let a Youth be seen drawing off this Veil; and a Nymph, near the Youth, transcribing what she there discovers.

Such a Design would easily indicate its Meaning. The Youth we might imagine to be the Genius

Y 3
Ch. II. It appears from what has been said, that the Matter or common Subject of Language is that Species of Sounds called Voices articulate.

What

of Man (Namæ Deus humanae, as Horace styles him;) the Nymph to be Mnemosyne, or Memory; as much as to infinuate that “Man, for the "Preservation of his Deeds and Inventions, was necessarily obliged to have recourse to Letters; and that "Memory, being conscious of her own Insufficiency, "was glad to avail herself of so valuable an Acquisition.”

Mr. Stuart, well known for his accurate and elegant Edition of the Antiquities of Athens, has adorned this Work with a Frontispiece agreeable to the above Ideas, and that in a Taste truly Attic and Simple, which no one possesses more eminently than himself.


For the value and importance of Principles, and the difficulty in attaining them, see Aristot. de Sophist. French. C. 34.
What remains to be examined in the Ch. II. following Chapter, is Language under its characteristic and peculiar Form, that is to say, Language considered, not with respect to Sound, but to Meaning.

The following Passage, taken from that able Mathematician Tacquet, will be found peculiarly pertinent to what has been said in this chapter concerning Elementary Sounds, p. 324, 325.

Upon the Form, or peculiar Character of Language.

Ch. III. When to any articulate Voice there accedes by compact a Meaning or Signification, such Voice by such accession is then called a Word; and many Words, possessing their Significations (as it were) under the same Compact (a), unite in constituting a particular Language.

(a) See before Note (c) p. 314. See also Vol. I. Treatise II. c. 1. Notes (a) and (c).

The following Quotation from Ammonius is remarkable—Καθάπερ εἰν τὸ μὲν κατὰ τόπον μικρῶθαι, φύσει, τὸ δὲ ἐρημεῖσθαι, ἠφεσεν κατὰ συνθήκην, κἀ τὸ μὲν ἐξ-λευ, φύσει, ἡ δὲ Ἁθέων, ἠφεσεν ὑπὸ κατὰ τὸ μὲν φαινεῖν, φύσει, τὸ δὲ δὴ ὁμομάτων ἡ ἐφικάτων σημαίνειν, ἠφεσε—καὶ ἐνεικ τὴν μὲν φωνητικὴν ὑπομονήν, ὁργανον ἐκα τῶν φυσικῶν ἐν ἡμῖν δυνάμεως φωνησιῶν, ἡ ἐφημικῶν, κατὰ φύσιν ἠφεσεν ὡς ἐκείνῳ παραθέτει τῆς ἀλόγους ζώοις.
It appears from hence, that a Word Ch. III. may be defined a Voice articulate, and significant by Compaé— and that Language may be defined a System of such Voices, so significant.

It is from notions like these concerning Language and Words, that one may be

---

ζώις τὸ ὑ ὑμάσιν, ἡ ρῆμασιν, ἢ τοῖς ἐκ τῶν συν-κειμένων λόγων ἡγοθαὶ ὕφος τῶν σημασίαν (ἐκέτι 
Φοισι θείων, ἀλλὰ Θείων) ἐξαίθετον ἐχεῖν ὑφος τα ἁλογα 
ζών, διότι κῇ μόνον τῶν Ὑμητῶν αὐτοκινήτως μετέχει 
ψυχῆς, ἢ τέχνης ἐνεργείᾳ ἄνθρωπος, ἤνα κῇ ἐν ἀυτῷ 
τῷ Φοισεῖ ἢ τεχνη τοῦ ἀνθρώπου διακειμέναι ὁμάθεις: διὰ 
ὅτι δὲ τοῦτο οἱ εἰς κάλλες συντιθήμενοι λόγοι μετὰ μέτρων, 
ἠ ἂνευ μέτρων. In the same manner therefore, as local 
Motion is from Nature, but Dancing is something positive; and as Timber exists in Nature, but a Door is something positive; so is the power of producing a vocal Sound founded in Nature, but that of explaining ourselves by Nouns, or Verbs, something positive. And hence it is, that as to the simple power of producing vocal Sound (which is as it were the Organ or Instrument to the Soul's faculties of Knowledge or Volition) as to this vocal power I say, Man seems to possess it from Nature, in like manner as irra-
be tempted to call Language a kind of Picture of the Universe, where the Words are as the Figures or Images of all particulars.

And yet it may be doubted, how far this is true. For if Pictures and Images are all of them Imitations, it will follow, that whoever has natural faculties to know the

irrational animals: but as to the employing of Nouns, or Verbs, or Sentences composed out of them, in the explanation of our Sentiments (the thing thus employed being founded not in Nature, but in Position) this he seems to possess by way of peculiar eminence, because he alone of all mortal Beings partakes of a Soul, which can move itself, and operate artificially; so that even in the Subject of Sound his artificial Power shews itself; as the various elegant Compositions both in Metre, and without Metre, abundantly prove. Ammon. de Interpr. p. 51. a.

It must be observed, that the operating artificially, (ισόγειον τεχνικὸς) of which Ammonius here speaks, and which he considers as a distinctive Mark peculiar to the Human Soul, means something very different from the mere producing works of elegance and design; else it could never be a mark of Distinction between Man, and many other Species of Animals, such as the Bee, the Beaver, the Swallow, &c. See Vol. I. p. 8, 9, 10. 158, 159, &c.
the Original, will by help of the same Ch. III. faculties know also its Imitations. But it by no means follows, that he who knows any Being, should know for that reason its Greek or Latin Name.

The Truth is, that every Medium, through which we exhibit any thing to another's Contemplation, is either derived from Natural Attributes, and then it is an Imitation; or else from Accidents quite arbitrary, and then it is a Symbol (b).

Now,

(b) Διαφέρει δὲ τὸ ΟΜΟΙΩΜΑ τῷ ΣΥΜΒΟΛΟΤΟΥ, καθὼς τὸ μὲν ὀμοιώμα τῆς Φύσεως αὐτῆς τῇ πράγματι κατὰ τὸ ὑμνατέν ἀπεικονιζόμεθα: σύμφων, τῇ ικετὲ ἓν ἕφ᾽ ἡμῖν αὐτὸ μεταπλάσται' τὸ γὰρ ἐν τῇ εἰκόνι γεγραμμένη τῷ Σωκράτει ὀμοιώμα, ἐν μὴ τῇ τῷ Φιλαξιοῦ, κῷ τῷ σεμών, κῇ τῷ ἐξουδηθημένῳ ἔχει τῇ Σωκράτει, ἕκτ᾽ ἢν αὐτῇ λέγοιτο εἶναι ὀμοιώμα, τῷ δὲ μὲ σύμμετον, Ἦτοι σημεῖον, (ἀμφότερα γὰρ ὁ Φιλοσοφῶν αὐτὸ ὀνομάζει) τὸ ὕλον ἑφ᾽ ἡμῖν ἔχει, ἀὖ τῇ ἐν μόνῃ ὑφιστάμενον τῆς ἡμετέρας ἐπιστήμης ἐπινοεῖ ὑπο, τῇ ποτὲ δὲι συμβαλλειν ἀλλήλοις τῷ πολεμίους, σύμφωνοι.
Now, if it be allowed that in far the greater part of things, not any of their natural Attributes are to be found in articulate Voices, and that yet thro' such Voices things of every kind are exhibited, it will follow that Words must of necessity be Symbols, because it appears that they cannot be Imitations.

But here occurs a Question, which deserves attention—"Why in the common intercourse of men with men have "Imitations been neglected, and Symbols "pre-

σύμβολον ἔκαι τῇ σαλπηγγῷ ἀπήχεις, τῇ λαμπάδος ρέις, καθάπερ φησιν Εὐρυτίδης,

Επεὶ δ' ἀφεὶθη πυρσός, αὐς τυφονικός Ἴππειρη τῇ γένεις, σύμα Φεύνιου μάχης.

Δύναται δὲ τις ὑπείροικι κἂ δόρατος ανάτασι, κἂ βέλως ἀφεσιν, κἂ αλλ' μυρία.—A Representation or Resemblance differs from a Symbol, in as much as the Resemblance aims as far as possible to represent the very nature of the thing, nor is it in our power to shift or vary it. Thus a Representation intended for Socrates in a Picture, if it have not these circumstances peculiar
preferred, although Symbols are only Ch. III. known by Habit or Institution, while "Imitations are recognized by a kind of "natural Intuition?"—To this it may be answered, that if the Sentiments of the Mind, like the Features of the Face, were immediately visible to every beholder, the Art of Speech or Discourse would have been perfectly superfluous. But now, while our Minds lie enveloped and hid, and the Body (like a Veil) conceals every thing but itself, we are necessarily compelled, when we communicate our Thoughts, to

culiar to Socrates, the bald, the flat-nosed, and the Eyes projecting, cannot properly be called a Representation of him. But a Symbol or Sign (for the Philosopher Aristotle uses both names) is wholly in our own power, as depending singly for its existence on our imagination. Thus for example, as to the time when two armies should engage, the Symbol or Sign may be the sounding of a Trumpet, the throwing of a Torch, (according to what Euripides says,

But when the flaming Torch was hurl'd, the sign
Of purple fight, as when the Trumpet sounds, &c.) or else one may suppose the elevating of a Spear, the darting of a Weapon, and a thousand ways besides. Ammon. in Lib. de Interp. p. 17. b.
Ch. III. to convey them to each other through a Medium which is corporeal (c). And hence it is that all Signs, Marks, Imitations, and Symbols must needs be sensible, and addressed as such to the Senses (d). Now the Senses, we know, never exceed their natural Limits; the Eye perceives no Sounds; the Ear perceives no Figures nor Colours. If therefore we were to converse, not by Symbols but by Imitations, as far as things are characterized by Figure

(c) Αἱ ψυχαὶ αἱ ἁμέτεραι, γυμναὶ μὲν ἃσι πῶν σωμάτων, ἀδύνατο δὲ αὐτῶν τῶν νοημάτων σημαίνειν ἀλλάλιας τὰ περάγματα. Ἡπειρὶ δὲ σώμασι συνειδηταῖς, δίκαιον νέφες πειρακαλύπτειν αὐτῶν τὸ νεφέν, ἐδεῖθητι τῶν ὁμοράτων, δι' αὐν σημαίνειν ἀλλάλιαις τὰ περάγματα. Animi noslri a corporis compage secreti res vicissim animi conceptionibus significare possent: cum autem corporibus involuti sint, perinde ac nebula, ipsorum intelligendi vis obtestitur: quocirca opus eis fuit nominibus, quibus res inter se significarent. Ammon. in Prædicam. p. 18. a.

(d) Quicquid scindi possit in differentias satis numerosas, ad notionum varietatem explicandam (modo differentia illæ senfui perceptibles sint) fieri poteft vehiculum cogitationum de homine in hominem. Bacon. de Augm. Scient. VI. 1.
Figure and Colour, our Imitation would be necessarily thro' Figure and Colour also. Again, as far as they are characterized by Sounds, it would for the same reason be thro' the Medium of Sounds. The like may be said of all the other Senses, the Imitation still shifting along with the Objects imitated. We see then how complicated such Imitation would prove.

If we set Language therefore, as a Symbol, in opposition to such Imitation; if we reflect on the Simplicity of the one, and the Multiplicity of the other; if we consider the Ease and Speed, with which Words are formed (an Ease which knows no trouble or fatigue; and a Speed, which equals the Progress of our very Thoughts) if we oppose to this the difficulty and length of Imitations; if we remember that some Objects are capable of no Imitations at all, but that all Objects universally may be typified by Symbols; we may plainly

* Επεξ οἰκονομικα—See before p. 325.
Ch. III. plainly perceive an Answer to the Question here proposed "Why, in the common " intercourse of men with men, Imita-" tions have been rejected, and Symbols " preferred."

Hence too we may perceive a Reason, why there never was a Language, nor in- deed can possibly be framed one, to express the Properties and real Essences of things, as a Mirror exhibits their Figures and their Colours. For if Language of itself imply nothing more, than certain Species of Sounds with certain Motions concomitant; if to some Beings Sound and Motion are no Attributes at all; if to many others, where Attributes, they are no way essen- tial (such as the Murmurs and Wavings of a Tree during a storm) if this be true—it is impossible the Nature of such Beings should be expressed, or the least essentia! Property be any way imitated, while be- tween the Medium and themselves there is nothing CONNATURAL (c).

It

(c) See Vol. I. Treatise II. c. 3. p. 70.
It is true indeed, when *Primitives* were once established, it was easy to follow the Connection and Subordination of Nature, in the just deduction of *Derivatives* and *Compounds*. Thus the Sounds, *Water*, and, *Fire*, being once annexed to those two Elements, it was certainly more natural to call Beings participating of the first, *Watry*, of the last, *Fiery*, than to commute the Terms, and call them by the reverse. But why, and from what *natural Connections* the Primitives themselves might not be commuted, it will be found, I believe, difficult to assign a Reason, as well in the instances before us, as in most others. We may here also see the Reason, why all *Language is founded in Compact*, and not in Nature; for so are all Symbols, of which Words are a certain Species.

The Question remains if *Words are Symbols*, then *Symbols of what?—*

Z. If
Ch. III. If it be answered, of things, the question returns, of what things?—If it be answered, of the several Individuals of Sense, the various particular Beings, which exist around us—to this, it is replied, may be raised certain Doubts. In the first place every Word will be in fact a proper Name. Now if all Words are proper Names, how came Lexicographers, whose express business is to explain Words, either wholly to omit proper Names, or at least to explain them, not from their own Art, but from History?

Again, if all Words are proper Names, then in strictness no Word can belong to more than one Individual. But if so, then, as Individuals are infinite, to make a perfect Language, Words must be infinite also. But if infinite, then incomprehensible, and never to be attained by the wisest Men; whose labours in Language upon this Hypothesis would be as idle as that study of infinite written Symbols, which Mission-
Again, if all Words are proper Names, or (which is the same) the Symbols of Individuals; it will follow, as Individuals are not only infinite, but ever passing, that the Language of those, who lived ages ago, will be as unknown now, as the very Voices of the Speakers. Nay the Language of every Province, of every Town, of every Cottage, must be every where different, and every where changing, since such is the Nature of Individuals, which it follows.

Again, if all Words are proper Names, the Symbols of Individuals, it will follow that in Language there can be no general Proposition, because upon the Hypothesis all Terms are particular; nor any Affirmative Proposition, because no one Individual in nature is another. It remains, there can be no Propositions, but Particular Negatives.
Ch. III. But if so, then is Language incapable of communicating *General Affirmative Truths*—If so, then of communicating *Demonstration*—If so, then of communicating *Sciences*, which are so many Systems of Demonstrations—If so, then of communicating *Arts*, which are the Theorems of Science applied practically—if so, we shall be little the better for it either in Speculation or in Practice (e). And so much for this Hypothesis; let us now try another.

If Words are not the Symbols of external Particulars, it follows of course, they must be the Symbols of our Ideas: For this is evident, if they are not Symbols

(e) The whole of *Euclid* (whose Elements may be called the basis of Mathematical Science) is founded upon general *Terms*, and general *Propositions*, most of which are *affirmative*. So true are those Verses, however barbarous as to their style,

*Syllogizari non est ex Particulari,
Neve Negativis, recte concludere si vis.*
Symbols of things _without_, they can only Ch. III. be Symbols of something _within_.

_Here then the Question recurs, if Symbols of Ideas, then of what Ideas?_—Of sensible Ideas.—Be it so, and what follows?—Every thing in fact, which has followed already from the supposition of their being the Symbols of _external Particulars_; and that from this plain and obvious reason, because the several _Ideas_, which _Particulars_ imprint, must needs be as _infinite_ and _mutable_, as they are themselves.

_If_ then _Words_ are neither the Symbols of _external Particulars_, nor yet of _particular Ideas_, they can be _Symbols_ of nothing else, except of _general Ideas_, because nothing else, except these, remains. —And what do we mean by _general Ideas_?—We mean _such as are common to many Individuals_; not only _to_ Individuals which _exist now_, but which _existed_
Ch. III. existed in ages past, and will exist in ages future; such for example, as the Ideas belonging to the Words, Man, Lion, Cedar.

—Admit it, and what follows?—It follows, that if Words are the Symbols of such general Ideas, Lexicographers may find employ, though they meddle not with proper Names.

It follows that one Word may be, not homonymously, but truly and essentially common to many Particulars, past present and future; so that however these Particulars may be infinite, and ever fleeting, yet Language notwithstanding may be definite and steady. But if so, then attainable even by ordinary Capacities, without danger of incurring the Chinese Absurdity *

Again, it follows that the Language of those, who lived ages ago, as far as it

* See p. 338, 339.
stands for the same general Ideas, may be as Ch. III. intelligible now, as it was then. The like may be said of the same Language being accommodated to distant Regions, and even to distant Nations, amidst all the variety of ever new and ever changing Objects.

Again, it follows that Language may be expressive of general Truths; and if so, then of Demonstration, and Sciences, and Arts; and if so, become subservient to purposes of every kind (f).

Now if it be true "that none of these things could be asserted of Language, "were not Words the Symbols of general Ideas—and it be further true, that these things may be all undeniably asserted "of Language"—it will follow (and that necessarily) that Words are the Symbols of general Ideas.

(f) See before Note (e).
Ch. III. And yet perhaps even here may be an Objection. It may be urged, if Words are the Symbols of general Ideas, Language may answer well enough the purpose of Philosophers, who reason about general, and abstract Subjects—but what becomes of the business of ordinary Life? Life we know is merged in a multitude of Particulars, where an Explanation by Language is as requisite, as in the highest Theorems. The Vulgar indeed want it to no other End. How then can this End in any respect be answered, if Language be expressive of nothing farther than general Ideas?

To this it may be answered, that Arts surely respect the business of ordinary Life; yet so far are general Terms from being an Obstacle here, that without them no Art can be rationally explained. How for instance should the measuring Artist ascertain to the Reapers the price of their labours, had not he first through general Terms
Terms learnt those general Theorems, that respect the doctrine and practice of Mensuration?

But suppose this not to satisfy a persevering Objector—suppose him to insist, that, admitting this to be true, there were still a multitude of occasions for minute particularizing, of which it was not possible for mere Generals to be susceptible—suppose, I say, such an Objection, what should we answer?—That the Objection was just; that it was necessary to the Perfection and Completion of Language, that it should be expressive of Particulars, as well as of Generals. We must however add, that its general Terms are by far its most excellent and essential Part, since from these it derives "that comprehensive Universality, that just proportion of Precision and Permanence, "without which it could not possibly "be either learnt, or understood, or ap-
"plied to the purposes of Reasoning and "Science;"
ONE Method of expressing Particulars, is that of Proper Names. This is the least artificial, because proper Names being in every district arbitrarily applied, may be unknown to those, who know the Language perfectly well, and can hardly therefore with propriety be considered as parts of it. The other and more artificial Method is that of Definitives or Articles (g), whether we assume the pro-nominal, or those more strictly so called. And here we cannot enough admire the exquisite Art of Language, which, without wandering into infinitude, contrives how to denote things infinite; that is to say in other words, which, by the small Tribe of Definitives properly applied to general Terms,

(g) See before p. 72, &c. 233, &c.
Terms, knows how to employ these last, Ch.III. tho' in number finite, to the accurate ex-
pression of infinite Particulars.

To explain what has been said by a single example. Let the general Term be MAN. I have occasion to apply this Term to the denoting of some Particular. Let it be required to express this Particular, as unknown; I say, A Man—known; I say, the Man—indfinite; ANY Man—definite; A CERTAIN Man—present and near; THIS Man—present and distant; THAT Man—like to some other; SUCH A Man—an indfinite Multitude; MANY Men—a definite Multitude; A THOUSAND Men;—the ones of a Multitude, taken throughout; EVERY Man—the same ones, taken with distinction; EACH Man—taken in order; FIRST Man, second Man, &c.—the whole Multitude of Particulars taken collectively; ALL Men —the Negation of this Multitude; NO Man. But of this we have spoken already, when we inquired concerning Definitives.
Ch. III. The Sum of all is, that Words are the Symbols of Ideas both general and particular; yet of the general, primarily, essentially, and immediately; of the particular, only secondarily, accidentally, and mediate.

Should it be asked, "why has Language this double Capacity?"—May we not ask, by way of return, Is it not a kind of reciprocal Commerce, or Intercourse of our Ideas? Should it not therefore be framed, so as to express the whole of our Perception? Now can we call that Perception intire and whole, which implies either Intellection without Sensation, or Sensation without Intellection? If not, how should Language explain the whole of our Perception, had it not Words to express the Objects, proper to each of the two Faculties?
To conclude—As in the preceding Ch. III. Chapter we considered Language with a view to its Matter, so here we have considered it with a view to its Form. Its Matter is recognized, when it is considered as a Voice; its Form, as it is significant of our several Ideas; so that upon the whole it may be defined—A System of Articulate Voices, the Symbols of our Ideas, but of those principally, which are general or universal.
Concerning general or universal Ideas.

Much having been said in the preceding Chapter about general or universal Ideas, it may not perhaps be amiss to inquire, by what process we come to perceive them, and what kind of Beings they are; since the generality of men think so meanly of their existence, that they are commonly considered, as little better than Shadows. These Sentiments are not unusual even with the Philosopher now a days, and that from causes much the same with those, which influence the Vulgar.

The Vulgar merged in Sense from their earliest Infancy, and never once dreaming any thing to be worthy of pursuit, but what either pampers their Appetite, or fills their Purse, imagine nothing to
to be real, but what may be tasted, or touched. The Philosopher, as to these matters being of much the same Opinion, in Philosophy looks no higher, than to experimental Amusements, deeming nothing Demonstration, if it be not made ocular. Thus instead of ascending from Sense to Intellect (the natural progress of all true Learning) he hurries on the contrary into the midst of Sense, where he wanders at random without any end, and is lost in a Labyrinth of infinite Particulars. Hence then the reason why the sublimer parts of Science, the Studies of Mind, Intellection, and Intelligent Principles, are in a manner neglected; and, as if the Criterion of all Truth were an Alembic or an Air-pump, what cannot be proved by Experiment, is deemed no better than mere Hypothesis.

And yet it is somewhat remarkable, amid the prevalence of such Notions, that there should still remain two Sciences in fashion,
fashion, and these having their Certainty of all the least controverted, which are not in the minutest article depending upon Experiment. By these I mean Arithmetic, and Geometry (a). But to come to our Subject concerning general Ideas.

(a) The many noble Theorems (so useful in life, and so admirable in themselves) with which these two Sciences so eminently abound, arise originally from Principles, the most obvious imaginable; Principles, so little wanting the pomp and apparatus of Experiment, that they are self-evident to every one, possessed of common sense. I would not be understood, in what I have here said, or may have said elsewhere, to undervalue Experiment; whose importance and utility I freely acknowledge, in the many curious Nostrums and choice Receipts, with which it has enriched the necessary Arts of life. Nay, I go farther—I hold all justifiable Practice in every kind of Subject to be founded in Experience, which is no more than the result of many repeated Experiments. But I must add, that the man who acts from Experience alone, tho' he act ever so well, is but an Empiric or Quack, and that not only in Medicine, but in every other Subject. It is then only that we recognize Art, and that the Empiric quits his name for the more honourable one of Artist, when to his Experience he adds Science,
MAN'S FIRST PERCEPTIONS are those of the Senses, in as much as they commence from his earliest Infancy. These Perceptions, if not infinite, are at least indefinite, and more fleeting and transient, than the very Objects, which they exhibit, because

SCIENCE, and is thence enabled to tell us; not only, what is to be done, but why it is to be done; for ART is a composite of EXPERIENCE and SCIENCE, Experience providing it MATERIALS, and SCIENCE giving them A FORM.

In the mean time, while EXPERIMENT is thus necessary to all PRACTICAL WISDOM, with respect to pure and SPECULATIVE SCIENCE, as we have hinted already, it has not the least to do. For whoever heard of LOGIC, or GEOMETRY, or ARITHMETIC being proved experimentally? It is indeed by the application of these that Experiments are rendered useful; that they are assumed into Philosophy, and in some degree made a part of it, being otherwise nothing better than puerile amusements. But that these Sciences themselves should depend upon the Subjects, on which they work, is, as if the Marble were to fashion the Chizzle, and not the Chizzle the Marble.
because they not only depend upon the existence of those Objects, but because they cannot subsist, without their immediate Presence. Hence therefore it is, that there can be no Sensation of either Past or Future, and consequently had the Soul no other Faculties, than the Senses, it never could acquire the least Idea of Time (b).

But happily for us we are not deserted here. We have in the first place a Faculty, called Imagination or Fancy, which however as to its energies it may be subsequent to Sense, yet is truly prior to it both in dignity and use. This it is which retains the fleeting Forms of things, when Things themselves are gone, and all Sensation at an end.

That this Faculty, however connected with Sense, is still perfectly different, may be

(b) See before p. 105. See also p. 112. Note (f).
be seen from hence. We have an *Imagination* of things, that are gone and extinct; but no such things can be made objects of *Sensation*. We have an easy command over the Objects of our *Imagination*, and can call them forth in almost what manner we please; but our *Sensations* are necessary, when their Objects are present, nor can we control them, but by removing either the Objects, or ourselves (c).

As

(c) Besides the distinguishing of *Sensation* from *Imagination*, there are two other Faculties of the Soul, which from their nearer alliance ought carefully to be distinguished from it, and these are ΜΗΜΗ, and ΑΝΑΜΗΣΙΣ, Memory, and Recollection.

When we view some *sensation* repose within us, without thinking of its rise, or referring it to any sensible Object, this is Phantasy or Imagination.

When we view some such *sensation*, and refer it withal to that sensible Object, which in time past was its cause and original, this is Memory.

Lastly
Ch. IV. As the Wax would not be adequate to its business of Signature, had it not a Power to retain, as well as to receive; the same holds of the Soul, with respect to Sense and Imagination. Sense is its receptive

Lastly the Road, which leads to Memory through a series of Ideas, however connected whether rationally or casually, this is Recollection. I have added casually, as well as rationally, because a casual connection is often sufficient. Thus from seeing a Garment, I think of its Owner; thence of his Habitation; thence of Woods; thence of Timber; thence of Ships, Sea-fights, Admirals, &c.

If the Distinction between Memory and Phantasy be not sufficiently understood, it may be illustrated by being compared to the view of a Portrait. When we contemplate a Portrait, without thinking of whom it is the Portrait, such Contemplation is analogous to Phantasy. When we view it with reference to the Original, whom it represents, such Contemplation is analogous to Memory.

We may go farther. Imagination or Phantasy may exhibit (after a manner) even things that are to come. It is here that Hope and Fear paint all their pleasant, and all their painful Pictures of Futurity. But Memory is confined in the strictest manner to the past. What
ceptive Power; IMAGINATION, its re-Ch.IV. tentive. Had it Sense without Imagination, it would not be as Wax, but as Water, where tho’ all Impressions may be instantly made, yet as soon as made they are as instantly lost.

Thus then, from a view of the two Powers taken together, we may call Sense (if we please) a kind of transient Imagination; and Imagination on the contrary a kind of permanent Sense (d).

Now

What we have said, may suffice for our present purpose. He that would learn more, may consult Aristot. de Animâ, L. III. c. 3, 4. and his Treatise de Mem. et Reminisc.

(d) Ti toin ev η Φανασία διε αυ γυναίκαμεν δει νοειν εν ημιν από των ενεργείων των ψευτικα ξιον τύπου (lege τύπον) τινα κα αναγκαρφημα εν τη πρωτη αισθητική, εγκαταλείμμα της υπο τα αισθητη γυναικεις κανόνες, η κα μυκητι τα αισθητα παρόντος, υπομείνει τα κα σώζεται, δι ωσπερ ικων της αυτης, δι κα
Ch. IV. Now as our Feet in vain venture to walk upon the River, till the Frost bind the Current, and harden the yielding Surface; so does the Soul in vain seek to exert its higher Powers, the Powers I mean of Reason and Intellect, till Imagination first fix the fluency of Sense, and thus provide a proper Basis for the support of its higher Energies.

After

τὰς μνήμες ἐκὼ σωζόμενον ἀλίου γίνεται τὸ τοιῶν ἐγκαταλείμμα, ἐν τὸν τοιῶν ὀσπερ τύπον, ΦΑΝΤΑΣΙΑΝ καλάζω. Now what Phansy or Imagination is, we may explain as fellows. We may conceive to be formed within us, from the operations of our Senses about sensible Subjects, some Impression (as it were) or Picture in our original Sensory, being a relic of that motion caused within us by the external object; a relic, which when the external object is no longer present, remains and is still preserved, being as it were its Image, and which, by being thus preserved, becomes the cause of our having Memory. Now such a sort of relic and (as it were) Impression they call Phansy or Imagination. Alex. Aphrod. de Animā, p. 135. b. Edit. Ald.
After this manner, in the admirable Oeconomy of the Whole, are Natures subordinate made subservient to the higher. Were there no Things external, the Senses could not operate; were there no Sensations, the Imagination could not operate; and were there no Imagination, there could be neither Reasoning nor Intellec tion, such at least as they are found in Man, where they have their Intentions and Remissions in alternate succession, and are at first nothing better, than a mere Capacity or Power. Whether every Intellect begins thus, may be perhaps a question; especially if there be any one of a nature more divine, to which "Intension and Remission " and mere Capacity are unknown (e).” But not to digress.

(e) See p. 162. The Life, Energy, or Manner of Man’s Existence is not a little different from that of the Deity. The Life of Man has its Essence in Motion.
It is then on these permanent Phantasms that the human mind first works, and by motion. This is not only true with respect to that lower and subordinate life, which he shares in common with vegetables, and which can no longer subsist than while the fluids circulate, but it is likewise true in that life, which is peculiar to him as man. Objects from without first move our faculties, and thence we move of ourselves either to practice or contemplation. But the life or existence of God (as far as we can conjecture upon so transcendent a subject) is not only complete throughout eternity, but complete in every instant, and is for that reason immutable and superior to all motion.

It is to this distinction that Aristotle alludes, when he tells us—Οὐ γὰρ μόνον κινεῖται ἐν ἐνέργεια, ὠλλοι οὐ άκινητος· οὐ ἐνοῦ μᾶλλον ἐν ἐξερέσει ἐστιν, ἀν ἐν κινήσει μεταβολὴ δὲ πάντων φλική, κατὰ τὸν ποιητὴν, διὰ ποιησίαν τινα· ὥσπερ γὰρ ἄθροισις ἐνμεταβολος ὁ ποιητὴς, ὡς ἡ φύσις ἡ διερρεύει μεταβολής· ὡς ᾞρ ἀπλή, οὕτως ἐπικλήσης. For there is not only an energy of motion, but of immobility; and pleasure or felicity exists rather in rest than in motion; change of all things being sweet (according to the poet) from a principle of gravity in those who believe so.
by an Energy as spontaneous and familiar to its Nature, as the seeing of Colours is familiar to the Eye, it discerns at once what

in the same manner as the bad man is one fickle and changeable, so is that Nature bad that requireth Variety, in as much as such Nature is neither simple nor even. Eth. Nicom. VII. 14. & Ethic. Eudem. VI. sub fin.

It is to this unalterable Nature of the Deity that Boethius refers, when he says in those elegant verses,

 temporis ab aevum
Ire jubes stabilisque manens das cuncta moveri.

From this single principle of immobility, may be derived some of the noblest of the Divine Attributes; such as that of impassive, incorruptible, incorporeal, &c. Vide Arist. Physic. VIII. Metaphyl. XIV. c. 6, 7, 9. 10. Edit. Du Val. See also Vol. I. of these Treatises, p. 262 to 266—also p. 295. where the Verses of Boethius are quoted at length.

It must be remembered however, that tho we are not Gods, yet as rational Beings we have within us something Divine, and that the more we can become superior to our mutable, variable, and irrational part, and place our welfare in that Good, which is immutable,
Ch. IV. what in many is one; what in things dissimilar and different is similar and the same (f). By this it comes to behold permanent, and rational, the higher we shall advance in real Happiness and Wisdom. This is (as an antient writer says)—Ὅμοιον τῷ Θεῷ κατὰ τὸ δυνατὸν, the becoming like to God, as far as in our power. Τοῖς μὲν γὰρ θεοῖς ἔσος ὁ βοῶς μακάς· τοῖς δ’ άνθρωποις, ἐφ’ ὅσον ὁμοιώματι τι τῆς τοιχώρθης ενεργίας υπάρχει. For to the Gods (f. says another antient) the whole of life is one continued happiness; but to Men, it is so far happy, as it rises to the resemblance of so divine an Energy. See Plat. in Theætæt. Arist. Eth. X. 8.

(f) This connective Act of the Soul, by which it views one in many, is perhaps one of the principal Acts of its most excellent Part. It is this removes that impenetrable mist, which renders Objects of Intelligence invisible to lower faculties. Were it not for this, even the sensible World (with the help of all our Sensations) would appear as unconnected, as the words of an Index. It is certainly not the Figure alone, nor the Touch alone, nor the Odour alone, that makes the Rose, but it is made up of all these, and other attributes united; not an unknown Constitution of insensible Parts, but a known Constitution of sensible Parts, unless we chuse to extirpate the possibility of natural Knowledge.
behold a kind of superior Objects; a new Ch. IV.
Race of Perceptions, more comprehensive

What then perceives this Constitution or Union?—Can it be any of the Senses?—No one of these, we know, can pass the limits of its own province. Were the Smell to perceive the union of the Odour and the Figure, it would not only be Smell, but it would be Sight also. It is the same in other instances. We must necessarily therefore recur to some higher collective Power, to give us a prospect of Nature, even in these her subordinate Wholes, much more in that comprehensive Whole, whose sympathy is universal, and of which these smaller Wholes are all no more than Parts.

But no where is this collecting, and (if I may be allowed the expression) this unifying Power more conspicuous, than in the subjects of pure Truth. By virtue of this power the Mind views One general Idea, in many Individuals; One Proposition in many general Ideas; One Syllogism in many Propositions; till at length by properly repeating and connecting Syllogism with Syllogism, it ascend into those bright and steady regions of Science,

Quas neque concutiunt venti, neque nubia nimbis
Adspersunt, &c. Lucr.
Even negative Truths and negative Conclusions cannot subsist, but by bringing Terms and Propositions together, so necessary is this uniting Power to every Species of Knowledge. See p. 3. 250.

He that would better comprehend the distinction between sensitive Perception, and intellectual, may observe that, when a Truth is spoken, it is heard by our Ears, and understood by our Minds. That these two Acts are different, is plain, from the example of such, as hear the sounds, without knowing the language. But to shew their difference still stronger, let us suppose them to concur in the same Man, who shall both hear and understand the Truth proposed. Let the Truth be for example, The Angles of a Triangle are equal to two right Angles. That this is one Truth, and not two or many Truths, I believe none will deny. Let me ask then, in what manner does this Truth become perceptible (if at all) to sensation?—The Answer is obvious; it is by successive Portions of little and little at a time. When the first Word is present, all the subsequent are absent; when the last Word is present, all the previous are absent; when any of the middle Words are present, then are there some absent, as well of one fort as the other. No more exists at once than a single Syllable, and the Remainder as much is not, (to Sensation at least) as tho’
and whole in the separate individuals of an infinite and fleeting Multitude, without de-

parting

Tho' it never had been, or never was to be. And so much for the perception of Sense, than which we see nothing can be more dissipated, fleeting, and detached. —And is that of the Mind, similar? —Admit it, and what follows? —It follows, that one Mind would no more recognize one Truth, by recognizing its Terms successively and apart, than many distant Minds would recognize it, were it distributed among them, a different part to each. The case is, every Truth is one, tho' its Terms are many. It is in no respect true by parts at a time, but it is true of necessity at once, and in an instant. —What Powers therefore recognize this Oneness or Unity? —Where even does it reside, or what makes it? —Shall we answer with the Stagirite, To δε ἐν ΠΟΙΟΤΝ τῷ τῷ ΝΟΤΣ ἄραν —If this be allowed, it should seem, where Sensation and Intellecation appear to concur, that Sensation was of Many, Intellecation was of One; that Sensation was temporary, divisible and successive; Intellecation, instantaneous, indivisible, and at once.

If we consider the Radii of a Circle, we shall find at the Circumference that they are Many; at the Center that they are One. Let us then suppose Sense and Mind to view the same Radii, only let Sense view them at the Circumference, Mind at the Center; and
and hence we may conceive, how these Powers differ, even where they jointly appear to operate in perception of the same object.

There is another Act of the Mind, the very reverse of that here mentioned; an Act, by which it perceives not one in many, but many in one. This is that mental Separation, of which we have given some account in the first Chapter of this Book; that Resolution or Analysis, which enables us to investigate the Causes, and Principles, and Elements of things. It is by Virtue of this, that we are enabled to abstract any particular Attribute, and make it by itself the Subject of philosophical Contemplation. Were it not for this, it would be difficult for particular Sciences to exist; because otherwise they would be as much blended, as the several Attributes of sensible Substances. How, for example, could there be such a Science as Optics, were we necessitated to contemplate Colour concreted with Figure, two Attributes, which the Eye can never view, but associated? I mention not a multitude of other sensible qualities, some of which still present themselves, whenever we look on any coloured Body.

Those
And thus we see the Process by which we arrive at general Ideas; for the

Those two noble Sciences, Arithmetic and Geometry, would have no basis to stand on, were it not for this separative Power. They are both conversant about Quantity; Geometry about continuous Quantity, Arithmetic about Discrete. Extension is essential to continuous Quantity; Monads, or Units, to Discrete. By separating from the infinite Individuals, with which we are surrounded, those infinite Accidents, by which they are all diversified, we leave nothing but those simple and perfectly similar Units, which being combined make Number, and are the Subject of Arithmetic. Again, by separating from Body every possible subordinate Accident, and leaving it nothing but its triple Extension of Length, Breadth, and Thickness, (of which were it to be deprived, it would be Body no longer) we arrive at that pure and unmixed Magnitude, the contemplation of whose properties makes the Science of Geometry.

By the same analytical or separative Power, we investigate Definitions of all kinds, each one of which is a developed Word, as the same Word is an enveloped Definition.

To conclude—In Composition and Division consists the whole of Science, Composition
Ch. IV. Perceptions here mentioned are in fact no other. In these too we perceive the objects of Science and real Knowledge, which can by no means be, but of that which is general, and definite, and fixed (g).

Here

TION making Affirmative Truth, and shewing us things under their Similitudes and Identities; Division making Negative Truth, and presenting them to us under their Dissimiliarities and Diversities.

And here, by the way, there occurs a Question.—If all Wisdom be Science, and it be the business of Science as well to compound as to separate, may we not say that those Philosophers took Half of Wisdom for the Whole, who distinguished it from Wit, as if Wisdom only separated, and Wit only brought together?

—Yet so held the Philosopher of Malmsbury, and the Author of the Essay on the Human Understanding.

(g) The very Etymologies of the Words ἘΠΙΣΤΗΜΗ, Scientia, and Understanding, may serve in some degree to shew the nature of these Faculties, as well as of those Beings, their true and proper Objects. ἘΠΙΣΤΗΜΗ ἡ ὑπόστασις, διὰ τὸ ἘΠΙ ΣΤΑΣΙΝ ἥ ὄρον τῶν προγνώμων ἁγιων ἴματι, τῆς
Here too even Individuals, however of Ch.IV. themselves unknowable, become objects of Knowledge.

This Etymology given by Blemmides, and long before him adopted by the Peripatetics, came originally from Plato, as may be seen in the following account of it from his Cratylus. In this Dialogue Socrates, having first (according to the Heraclitean Philosophy which Cratylus favoured) etymologized a multitude of Words with a view to that Flow and unceasing Mutation, supposed by Heraclitus to run thro' all things, at length changes his System, and begins to etymologize from another, which supposed something in nature to be permanent and fixed. On this principle he thus proceeds —Σκοπήμεν ὅν, ἐξ αὐτῶν ἀναλαβόντες περίτου μὲν τότε τὸ ὄνομα τῆς ἙΠΙΣΤΗΜΗΝ, ὡς ἀμφιθυμοῦ ἠσι, καὶ μᾶλλον οὐκ εἰκὲ σημαίνοι τι ὃτι ΙΣΤΗΞΙΝ ἡμῶν ἘΠΙ τοῖς πράγμασι τῆς ψυχῆς, ἃ ὃτι συμπερι- φέσεται. Let us consider then (says he) some of the very Words.
Knowledge, as far as their nature will permit. For then only may any Particular be

Words already examined; and in the first place, the Word Science; how disputable is this (as to its former Etymology) how much more naturally does it appear to signify, that it stops the Soul at things, than that it is carried about with them. Plat. Cratyl. p. 437. Edit. Serr.

The disputable Etymology, to which he here alludes, was a strange one of his own making in the former part of the Dialogue, adapted to the flowing System of Heraclitus there mentioned. According to this notion, he had derived ἙΙΣΘΜΗ from ἐπισθαῖ and μένειν, as if it kept along with things, by perpetually following them in their motions. See Plato as before, p. 412.

As to Scientia, we are indebted to Scaliger for the following ingenious Etymology. Ratiocinatio, motus quidam est; Scientia, quies: unde et nomen, tum apud Graecos, tum etiam nostrum. Πάντα τῷ ΕΠΙΣΤΑΣΘΑΙ, ΕΠΙΣΘΜΗ. Sisitur enim mentis agitation, et fit species in animo. Sic Latinum Scientia, ετι γίνεται ΣΧΕΣΙΣ ΤΟΤ ΟΝΤΟΣ. Nam Latini, quod nomen entis simplex ab usu abjecerunt atque repudiavero, omnibus aetivis participiis idem adjunxerunt. Audiens, ὡς ὁν ὢν. Sciens, ὡν ὢν. Scal. in Theophr. de Causis Plant. Lib. I. p. 17.

The
be said to be known, when by asserting it Ch.IV. to be a Man, or an Animal, or the like, we

The English Word, Understanding, means not so properly Knowledge, as that Faculty of the Soul, where Knowledge resides. Why may we not then imagine, that the framers of this Word intended to represent it as a kind of firm Basis, on which the fair Structure of Sciences was to rest, and which was supposed to stand under them, as their immovable Support?

Whatever may be said of these Etymologies, whether they are true or false, they at least prove their Authors to have considered Science and Understanding, not as fleeting powers of Perception, like Sense, but rather as steady, permanent, and durable Comprehensions. But if so, we must somewhere or other find for them certain steady, permanent, and durable Objects; since if Perception of any kind be different from the thing perceived, (whether it perceive straight as crooked, or crooked as straight; the moving as fixed, or the fixed as moving) such Perception must of necessity be erroneous and false. The following passage from a Greek Platonic (whom we shall quote again hereafter) seems on the present occasion not without its weight—Εἰ ἐστὶν γνῶσις ἀνθρώπου ἀπὸ τῆς ἀνθρώπου, ἐπεὶ ἐν τῷ γνῶσις ἀνθρώπου τῶν ἀνθρώπων. If there be
Now it is of these comprehensive and permanent Ideas, the genuine perceptions of pure Mind, that Words of all Languages, however different, are the Symbols. And hence it is, that as the Perceptions include, so do these their Symbols.

A knowledge more accurate than sensation; there must be certain objects of such knowledge more true than objects of sense.

The following then are Questions worth considering,—What these Objects are?—Where they reside?—And how they are to be discovered?—Not by experimental Philosophy it is plain; for that meddles with nothing, but what is tangible, corporeal, and mutable—nor even by the more refined and rational speculation of Mathematics; for this, at its very commencement, takes such Objects for granted. We can only add, that if they reside in our own Minds, (and who, that has never looked there, can affirm they do not?) then will the advice of the Satirist be no ways improper,

—Nec te quæsiveris extra.

Pers.
Symbols express, not this or that set of Ch.IV.
Particulars only, but all indifferently, as they happen to occur. Were therefore the Inhabitants of Salisbury to be transferred to York, tho' new particular objects would appear on every side, they would still no more want a new Language to explain themselves, than they would want new Minds to comprehend what they beheld. All indeed, that they would want, would be the local proper Names; which Names, as we have said already*, are hardly a part of Language, but must equally be learnt both by learned and unlearned, as often as they change the place of their abode.

It is upon the same principles we may perceive the reason, why the dead Languages (as we call them) are now intelligible; and why the Language of modern England is able to describe antient Rome;

* Sup. p. 345, 346.
and that of ancient Rome to describe modern England (h). But of these matters we have spoken before.

§ 2. And now having viewed the Process, by which we acquire general Ideas, let us begin anew from other Principles, and try to discover (if we can prove so fortunate) whence it is that these Ideas originally come. If we can succeed here, we may discern perhaps, what kind of Beings they are, for this at present appears somewhat obscure.

Let

(b) As far as Human Nature, and the primary Genera both of Substance and Accident are the same in all places, and have been so thro' all ages: so far all Languages share one common Identity. As far as peculiar species of Substance occur in different regions; and much more, as far as the positive Institutions of religious and civil Politics are everywhere different; so far each Language has its peculiar Diversity. To the Causes of Diversity here mentioned, may be added the distinguishing Character and Genius of every Nation, concerning which we shall speak hereafter.
Let us suppose any man to look for Ch. IV. the first time upon some Work of Art, as—
for example upon a Clock, and having sufficiently viewed it, at length to depart. Would he not retain, when absent, an Idea of what he had seen?—And what is it, to retain such Idea?—It is to have a Form internal correspondent to the external; only with this difference, that the Internal Form is devoted to the Matter; the External is united with it, being seen in the metal, the wood, and the like.

Now if we suppose this Spectator to view many such Machines, and not simply to view, but to consider every part of them, so as to comprehend how these parts all operate to one End, he might be then said to possess a kind of intelligible Form, by which he would not only understand, and know the Clocks, which he had seen already, but every Work also of like Sort, which he might see hereafter.—
Ch. IV. Should it be asked "which of these Forms is prior, the External and Sensible, or the Internal and Intelligible;" the Answer is obvious, that the prior is the Sensible.

Thus then we see, there are intelligible Forms, which to the Sensible are subsequent.

But farther still—If these Machines be allowed the Work not of Chance, but of an Artist, they must be the Work of one, who knew what he was about. And what is it, to work, and know what one is about? —It is to have an Idea of what one is doing; to possess a Form internal, correspondent to the external, to which external it serves for an Exemplar or Archetype.

Here then we have an intelligible Form, which is prior to the sensible Form; which, being truly prior as
as well in dignity as in time, can no more become subsequent, than Cause can to Effect.

Thus then, with respect to Works of Art, we may perceive, if we attend, a triple Order of Forms; one Order, intelligible and previous to these Works; a second Order, sensible and concomitant; and a third again, intelligible and subsequent. After the first of these Orders the Maker may be said to work; thro' the second, the Works themselves exist, and are what they are; and in the third they become recognized, as mere Objects of Contemplation. To make these Forms by different Names more easy to be understood; the first may be called the Maker's Form; the second, that of the Subject; and the third, that of the Contemplator.

Let us pass from hence to Works of Nature. Let us imagine ourselves viewing some diversified Prospect; "a Plain, "for example, spacious and fertile; a "river
Ch. IV. "river winding thro' it; by the banks of that river, men walking and cattle grazing; the view terminated with distant hills, some craggy, and some covered with wood." Here it is plain we have plenty of Forms natural. And could any one quit so fair a Sight, and retain no traces of what he had beheld?—And what is it, to retain traces of what one has beheld?—It is to have certain Forms internal correspondent to the external, and resembling them in every thing, except the being merged in Matter. And thus, thro' the same retentive and collective Powers, the Mind becomes fraught with Forms natural, as before with Forms artificial.—Should it be asked, "which of these natural Forms are prior, the External ones viewed by the Senses, or the Internal existing in the Mind?" the Answer is obvious, that the prior are the External.

Thus
Thus therefore in Nature, as well as Ch. IV. in Art, there are intelligible forms, which to the sensible are subsequent. Hence then we see the meaning of that noted School Axiom, *Nil est in Intellectu quod non prius fuit in Sensu*; an Axiom, which we must own to be so far allowable, as it respects the Ideas of a mere Contemplator.

But to proceed somewhat farther—Are natural Productions made by Chance, or by Design?—Let us admit by Design, not to lengthen our inquiry. They are certainly *more exquisite than any Works of Art*, and yet *these* we cannot bring ourselves to suppose made by Chance.—Admit it, and what follows?—*We must of necessity admit a Mind also, because Design implies Mind, wherever it is to be found.*—Allowing therefore this, what do we mean

* Arist. de Part. Animal. L. I. c. i.*
Ch. IV. mean by the Term, Mind?—We mean something, which, when it acts, knows what it is going to do; something stored with Ideas of its intended Works, agreeably to which Ideas those Works are fashioned.

That such Exemplars, Patterns, Forms, Ideas (call them as you please) must of necessity be, requires no proving, but follows of course, if we admit the Cause of Nature to be a Mind, as above mentioned. For take away these, and what a Mind do we leave without them? Chance surely is as knowing, as Mind without Ideas; or rather Mind without Ideas is no less blind than Chance.

The Nature of these Ideas is not difficult to explain, if we once come to allow a possibility of their Existence. That they are exquisitely beautiful, various, and orderly, is evident from the exquisite Beauty, Variety, and Order, seen in natural Substances,
stances, which are but their *Copies* or *Picures*. That they are *mental* is plain, as they are of the *Essence of Mind*, and consequently no Objects to any of the *Senses*, nor therefore circumscribed either by *Time* or *Place*.

**Here then,** on this System, we have plenty of *Forms intelligible, which are truly previous to all Forms sensible*. Here too we see that *Nature is not defective in her triple Order,* having (like Art) her *Forms previous, her concomitant, and her subsequent* (i).

That

(i) Simplicius, in his commentary upon the *Predicaments*, calls the *first Order* of these intelligible Forms, 

\[ \tau\alpha \varepsilon \omicron \rho\iota \tau\eta \varsigma \mu\varepsilon\theta\acute{i}\varepsilon\varsigma \omega\varsigma, \]  

those previous to Participation, and at other times, 

\[ \acute{n}i\varsigma\chi\epsilon\nu\gamma\mu\acute{i}\varepsilon\varsigma \kappa\omega\omicron\omicron\tau\varsigma, \]  

defined the transcendent *Universality or Sameness*; the *second Order* he calls \[ \tau\alpha \iota \mu\varepsilon\theta\acute{i}\varepsilon\varsigma, \]  

those which *exist in Participation*, that is, those merged in Matter; and at other times, he calls them 

\[ \acute{n}i\kappa\alpha\tau\alpha\tau\zeta\tau\epsilon\tau\gamma\mu\acute{i}\varepsilon\varsigma \kappa\omega\omicron\omicron\tau\varsigma, \]  

defined the *subordinate Universality or Sameness*; lastly, of the *third Order* he says, that
that they have no independent existence of their own, but that—ἡμεῖς ἀφελόντες αὐτά ἐν ταῖς ἑμετέραις ἐννοίαις, καθ' ἐαυτὰ ὑπεσήμανεν, we ourselves abstracting them in our own Imagination, have given them by such abstraction an existence as of themselves. Simp. in Predic. p. 17. In another place he says, in a language somewhat mysterious, yet still commovable to the same doctrine—Μάτρω τὸν τρίτον εὐπλεον τὸ κοινὸν, τὸ μὲν ἔχοντα μὲν τῶν καθ' ἑαυτά, ὡς ἄλλων τῆς ἐν αὐτοῖς κοινότητος, κατὰ τὰ μίαν ἐαυτὺς φύσιν, ὡσπερ ὡς τῆς δια-φορὰς κατὰ τὰν ψυχικὴν ἐξουσίαν—ἐνεργοῦν δὲ ἐστὶ τὸ κοινὸν, τὸ ἀπὸ κοινὸν ἄλλων τῶν διαφόρων οἰκεῖων ἐν-διδομένων, καὶ ἐκτρέφον τούτων—τρίτον δὲ, τὸ ἐν ταῖς ἑμετέραις διανοιαῖς ἐξ ἀφαρέσεως ὑπεσήμαμεν, εὐεργετικῶς ὅπερ—Perhaps therefore we must admit a TRIPLE ORDER OF WHAT IS UNIVERSAL AND THE SAME; that of the first Order, transcendent and superior to Particulars, which thro' its uniform nature is the cause of that Sameness existing in them, as thro' its multiform pre-conception it is the cause of their Diversity—that of the second Order, what is insinuated from the first universal Cause into the various Species of Beings, and which has its existence in those several Species—that of the third Order, what suffis by abstraction in our own Understandings, being of subsequent origin to the other two. Ibid. p. 21.
prior to all things else, The whole visi-
ble World exhibits nothing more, than

To Simplicius we shall add the two following Quota-
tions from Ammonius and Nicephorus Blemmides, which
we have ventured to transcribe, without regard to their
uncommon length, as they so fully establisht the Doc-
trine here advanced, and the works of these Authors
are not easy to be procured.

'Εννεαεθὸς τῶν δακτύλιος τις ἐκδύσωμα ἐξαν, εἰ
tόχοι, 'Αχιλλέως, κῇ κηρία πολλαὶ χαρακείμενα: ὁ δὲ
dακτύλιος σφραγιζέτω τῷ κηρᾶς πάσας ὤσεον δὲ
tis εἰσελθὼν κῇ Δεασάμενος τα κηρία, ἐπισήσας ώτι
πάντα εἰς ἐνὸς εἰσὶν ἐκδύσωμα, ἐκέφω χαρ' ἀντί τὸ
ἐκδύσωμα τῇ διανοίᾳ. Ἡ τούτων σφραγίς ἡ ἐν τῷ δακ-
tυλίῳ λέγεται πρὸ τῶν πολλῶν εἰναι, ἢ δὲ
ev τοῖς κηρίοις, ἐν τοῖς πολλοίς, ἐπὶ τοῖς
τῇ διανοίᾳ τῷ ἀπομακρύνει, ἐπὶ τοῖς πολλοῖς,
vτῇ ὑπογεγενής. Τότε ὡς ἐννεαεθὸς κῇ ἑπὶ τῶν γεωμETER
ἕωθαν: ὁ γὰρ Δημιουργὸς, ποιῶν θάνατα, ἔχει ταρ
ἐκατὼ τὰ ἁμών χαρακειμένα τῇ οὖν, ποιῶν άνθρωπον,
ἔχει τὸ ἔδος χαρ' ἐκατω τῷ ἀνθρώπῳ, ἂς ο ἄροιν,
θάνατος θεοὶ. Ἐστὶ δὲ τῆς ἐκκαθή λέγαν, ὡς ὡς ἐστὶ
ὡδὲ τῷ Δημιουργῷ τῇ οὐδῃ, ἀκάτω τῶν ταῦτα, ὡς ὁ
Δημιουργὸς δημιουργεῖ, ἢ ἐδώς τὰ ὧν ἀστὶ δημιο-
υργόμενα, ἢ ἀν ἐδώς. Ἀλλ' ἐμὲ μή μοὶ ἐδώς, ἢ ὁ ἂν
dημιουργεῖται. Τῆς γὰρ, μίλλων ποιήσει τῷ, ἀριστέοι
HERMES.

Ch. IV. so many passing Pictures of these immutable Archetypes. Nay thro' these it attains even a

mēllei poiein; ἡ γὰρ, ὡς ἡ Φώνις, ἀλὸγῷ δυνάμει poiei (ὥθεν ᾧ poiei ἡ Φώνις, ὡς ἐφισάνσα γυναι-
κῶς τῷ γραμμὸν) Ἐς δὲ τι καθ’ ἐξιν λογικὴν poiei, ὀδηπω πάντως τὸ γραμμὸν ὦν π’ αὐτῇ. Ἐς τοῦν ὢν
χειρον, ὡς κατὰ ἀνθρώπου, ὁ Θεὸς poiei, oide τὸ ὑπ’ αὐτ’ γραμμὸν’ ἐς δὲ εἰδεν ἃ poiei, αὐτοθέ ὑπάλου, ὡς
ἐσιν ἐν τῷ Δημιουργῷ τα ἐιδή. Ἐς δὲ τὸ ἔδοσ ἐν τῷ
Δημιουργῷ, ὡς ὡς ἐν τῷ δακτυλῷ τύπος· ἄρ’ λέγεται
τάτο τὸ ἔδοσ ἐν τῷ Ἵναι, ἡ χωρίς τῆς ὑλῆς. Ἐς δὲ τὸ ἔδοσ τῷ ἀνθρώπῳ ἄρ’ ἐν τοῖς καθ’
ἐμαρτο αἰθέρατοι, ὡς τα ἐν τοῖς κηροῖς εἰκοπάματα· ἄρ’
λέγεται τα τοῖν την ποιοῦν ἐν τοῖς πολλοῖς ἐναι,
ἡ αἰσχρίς τῆς ὑλῆς. Θεασάμενοι δὲ τοῖς κατὰ μέρος
ἀθροᾶτε, ὡς πάντες τῷ αὐτῷ ἔδοσ τῷ ἀνθρώπῳ ἔκχουν,
(ὡς ἐπὶ τῇ ὑπερον ἐλβόντος, ἢ Θεασάμενοι τῷ κηρίῳ)
ἀνεμαγαζέμεθα αὐτῷ ἐν τῇ δίκνοις· ἄρ’ λέγεται τατό
ἐπὶ τοῖς πολλοῖς, ἄρ’ ὑπον μετά τα πολλά,
ἡ ὑπερογεῖνες. Intelligatur annulus, qui alicujus, ut-
pote Achilles, imaginem insculptam habeat: multa insuper
ceré sint, et ab annulo imprimitur: veniat deinde quis-
piam, videatque ceras omnes unius annuli impressae for-
matae, annulique impressum in mente continet: sigillum
annulo insculptum, ante multa dicetur: in cerulis
impressam, in multis: quod vera in illius, qui illo ve-
ncerat intelligentiam remanserit, Post multa, et poste-
rius
rius genitum dicetur. Idem in generibus et formis intelli-
gendum conscc: etenim ille optimus procreator mundi Deus, 
omium rerum formas, atque exempla habet apud se: ut si 
hominem efficere velit, in hominis formam, quam habet, 
intueatur, et ad illius exemplum caeteros faciat omnes. At 
fi quis vestiterit, dicitque rerum formas apud Creatorem 
non esse: quies ut diligenter attendat: Opifex, quae facit, 
vul cognoscit, vel ignorant: sed is, qui nescit, nunciam 
quicquam faciet: quis enim id facere aggreditur, quod fa-
cere ignorat? Neque enim facultate quaddam rationis ex-
perte aliquid agit, prout agit natura (ex quo conscitur, 
ut natura etiam agat, et si quae faciat, non advertat:) Si 
vero ratione quadam aliquid facit, quodcumque ab eo fac-
tum est omnino cognovit. Si igitur Deus non pejore ra-
tione, quam homo, facit quid, quae fecit cognovit: si cog-
novit quae fecit, in ipso rerum formas esse perspicuum est. 
Formae autem in opifice sunt perinde ac in annulo sigillum, 
bacque forma ANTE MULTA, et avulsâ a materiâ dicitur. 
Atqui hominis species in unoquoque homine est, quem-
admodum etiam sigilla in ceris; et in MULTIS, nec avulsâ 
a materiâ dicitur. At cum singulos homines animo conspi-
cinus, et eandem in unoquoque formam atque effigiem vide-
mus, illa effigies in mente nostrâ insidens POST MULTA, 
et posterius genita dicetur: veluti in illo quoque dicelabamus, 
qui multa sigilla in cerâ uno et eodem annulo impressa con-
Δέχονται δὲ τὰ γένη \\
τὰ ἔδη ΠΡΟ ΤΩΝ 
ΠΟΛΛΩΝ, ΕΝ ΤΟΙΣ ΠΟΛΛΟΙΣ, ΕΠΙ 
ΤΟΙΣ ΠΟΛΛΟΙΣ· οἷον ἐννοεῖσθαι τι σφραγισθείριν, \\
ἐκού κό ἐκφυσώμα το τυχόν, εἰς τὰ κηδεία σελλαὶ μετα-
λαβέτω τῇ ἐκφύσωματ GenerationType, καὶ τις ὑπ' υψίν ἀγαθῶς 
ταύτα, μὴ σχετικικῶς μὴν ἄλογο τὸ σφραγισθείριν  ἐως-
θετὼς δὲ τα ἐν οἷς τῇ ἐκφύσωμα, ἐγείρητας ὅτι 
ἀντὶ τὰ ἀντὶ μετέχουσιν ἐκφυσώματIService, ἐγείρω 
τὰ σελλαὶ τῷ λόγῳ συναθροίσας εἰς ἐν, ἐχέτω τοῦτο κα-
τὰ διάνοιαν. Τὸ μὲν ἐν σφραγισθείριν ὑπόμα μέρε-
ται ΠΡΟ ΤΩΝ ΠΟΛΛΩΝ· τὸ δ᾿ ἐν τοῖς κηδείοις, 
ΕΝ ΤΟΙΣ ΠΟΛΛΟΙΣ· τὸ δὲ ἐξ αὐτῶν κατα-
ληφθὲν, ἐξ κατὰ διάνοιαν αὐλῶς ὑποσώ, ΕΠΙ ΤΟΙΣ 
ΠΟΛΛΟΙΣ. Ὅτως ἐν̆ ἕκ τα ἔδη τα ἔδη 
ΠΡΟ ΤΩΝ ΠΟΛΛΩΝ μὲν εἰσίν ἐν τῷ Δημιου-
ρήτῳ, κατὰ τέσσερις γόνες· ἐν τῷ Θεῷ γὰρ οἱ ὑ-
σιοτοῦν λόγοι τῶν ἄνω οἰκείως προφετεύουσι, καθ' ἐς 
λόγοι ὑπερέχουσιν τὰ ἐνα ὑπέρ αὐλὸς ἐκρούσιος 
παρήγαγεν. Ὁφεὶμαι δὲ λέγοντα τὰ γένη ἕκ τὰ 
ἐδή ΕΝ ΤΟΙΣ ΠΟΛΛΟΙΣ, διότι ἐν τοῖς κατὰ 
μὲς αὐθεντῶς τὸ τῷ αὐθεντῶς εἰδὼς ἐκι, ἕκ τοῖς 
κατὰ μὲς ὑποθέτον τῷ ὑπερὲ ἐδή Generation, ἐν αὐθεντῶς δὲ, 
ἐν ἑπιαστὶ, ἐκ τοῖς ἀλλοίς ἡμεῖς τὸ ἐνεργεῖται, ἐν 
τοῖς τοιαύταις ἐδών, ὅπερ ἐστὶ τῷ ἡμεῖς καὶ 
τοῖς ἡμεῖς ὁμοί ἐκ τοῖς ἡμεῖς τῷ παθολογῷ ἐνερ
gεῖται, εὐαγγελικῷ, εὐαγγελικῷ δὲ ἐκ τῶν θυσίων,
Book the Third.

Cally one, amid those infinite particular

...

(k) The following elegant Lines of Virgil are worth attending to, tho' applied to no higher a subject than Bees.

Ergo
May we be allowed then to credit those Ch. IV. speculative Men, who tell us, "it is in these

Ergo ipsas quamvis angusti terminus ævi
Excipiat: (neque enim plus septima ducitur ætas)
AT GENUS IMMORTEALE MANET—G. IV.

The fame Immortality, that is, the Immortality of the Kind, may be seen in all perishable substances, whether animal or inanimate; for tho' Individuals perish, the several Kinds still remain. And hence, if we take Time, as denoting the system of things temporary, we may collect the meaning of that passage in the Timæus, where the Philosopher describes Time to be—μέσοντος
ἀνώτατος οΰκ εν ειν κατ’ αειςμον ἡσαυ αιωνιοι εικόνα. ΑΕτεrer-
nitatis in uno permanentis Imaginem quandam, certis nu-
merorum articulis progressientem. Plat. V. III. p. 37. 
Edit. Serran.

We have subjoined the following extract from Boe-thius, to serve as a commentary on this description of Time—Æternitas igitur est, interminabilis vitae tota simul et perfecta possitio. Quod ex collatione tempora-
lium clarius liquet. Nam quidquid vivit in tempore, id praecedens à praeteritis in futura procedit: nihilque est in tempore ita constitutum, quod totum vitae suæ statium pa-
riter possit amplècti; sed cæsisnum quidem nondum apprehendit, heßernum vero jam perdidit. In hodiernâ quoque vita non amplius vivitis, quam in illo mobili transitórioque
Herms.

Ch.IV. "these permanent and comprehensive Forms that the Deity views at once, without looking abroad, all possible productions both present, past, and future—that this great and stupendous View is but a View of himself, where all things lie enveloped in their Principles and Exemplars, as being

momento. Quod igitur Temporis patitur conditionem, licet illud, sicut de mundo censuit Aristoteles, nec eaperit unquam esse, nec desinat, vitaque ejus cum temporis infinitate tendatur, nondum tamen tale est, ut æternum esse jure cedatur. Non enim totum simul infinitæ licet vitae spatium comprehendit, atque complecitur, sed futura nondum transsaeta jam non habet. Quod igitur interminabilis vitae plenitudinem totam pariter comprehendit, ac possidet, cui neque futuri quidquam absit, nec præteriti flaxeret, id æternum esse jure perhibet: idque necesse est, et sui compos praestens sibi semper affihere, et infinitatem mobilis temporis habere praeventem. Unde quidam non recte, qui cum au- diunt viam Platonis, mundum hunc nec habuisse initium, nec habiturum esse defunctum, hoc modo conditori conditum mundum fieri co-æternum putant. Aliud est enim per interminabilem duci vitam, (quod Mundo Plato tribuit) aliud interminabilis vitae totam pariter complexam esse praesentiam, quod Divinæ Mentis proprium esse manifestum est. Neque enim Deus
"ing essential to the fulness of his universal
"Intellecction?"—If so, it will be proper
that we invert the Axiom before men-
tioned, We must now say—Nil est in
Sensus, quod non prius fuit in Intellec-
tu. For tho' the contrary may be true
with respect to Knowledge merely human,
yet never can it be true with respect to

Deus conditis rebus antiquior videri debet temporis quanti-
tate, sed simplicis potius proprietate naturae. Hunc
enim vitae immobilis praesentarium sta-
tum, infimitus ille temporalium rerum
motus imitatur; cumque cum effingere, atque aquare
non possit, ex immobilitate deficit in motum; ex simplicitate
praesentiae decrescit in infinitam futuri ac prateriti quanti-
tatem; et, cum tam pariter vitæ suæ plenitudinem ne-
gueat possidere, hoc ipso, quod aliquo modo nunquam esse
definit, illud, quod implore atque exprimere non poteat,
aliquote videtur amulari, alligans se ad qualemunque
praesentiam hujus exigui volucrisque momenti: quæ, quo-
niam manentis illius praesentiae quandam
gestat imaginem, quibusunque contigerit, id pra-
flat, ut esse videantur. Quoniam vero manere non po-
tuit, infinitum Temporis iter arripuit: quod modo factum
est, ut continuaret vitam eundo, cujus pleni-
tudinem complecti non valuit permanendo. Itaque,
&c. De Consolat. Philopoph. L. V.
Ch. IV. Knowledge universally, unless we give Precedence to Atoms and lifeless Body, making Mind, among other things, to be struck out by a lucky Concourse.

§ 3. It is far from the design of this Treatise, to insinuate that Atheism is the Hypothesis of our latter Metaphysicians. But yet it is somewhat remarkable, in their several Systems, how readily they admit of the above Precedence.

For mark the Order of things, according to their account of them. First comes that huge Body the sensible World. Then this and its Attributes beget sensible Ideas. Then out of sensible Ideas, by a kind of lopping and pruning, are made Ideas intelligible, whether specific or general. Thus should they admit that Mind was coeval with Body, yet till Body gave it Ideas, and awakened its dormant Powers, it could at best have been nothing more
Book the Third.

more, than a sort of dead Capacity; for Ch.IV. Innate ideas it could not possibly have any.

At another time we hear of Bodies so exceedingly fine, that their very Exility makes them susceptible of sensation and knowledge; as if they shrunk into Intellect by their exquisite subtlety, which rendered them too delicate to be Bodies any longer. It is to this notion we owe many curious inventions, such as subtle Aether, animal Spirits, nervous Ducts, Vibrations, and the like; Terms, which modern Philosophy, upon parting with occult Qualities, has found expedient to provide itself, to supply their place.

But the intellectual Scheme, which never forgets Deity, postpones every thing corporeal to the primary mental Cause. It is here it looks for the origin of intelligible Ideas, even of those, which exist in human Capacities. For tho' sensible Objects may be
Ch. IV. be the destined medium, to awaken the dormant Energies of Man's Understanding, yet are those Energies themselves no more contained in Sense, than the Explosion of a Cannon, in the Spark which gave it fire (1).

(1) The following Note is taken from a Manuscript Commentary of the Platonic Olympiodorus, (quoted before p. 371) upon the Phaedo of Plato; which tho' perhaps some may object to from inclining to the Doctrine of Platonic Reminiscence, yet it certainly gives a better account how far the Senses assist in the acquisition of Science, than we can find given by vulgar Philosophers.

"Ουδέποτε γαρ τὰ χειρὶ ή δεύτερα ἀρχαὶ η λαίτας εἰς τῶν κρειστῶν ἦν ἦν ταῖς ἐγκυκλίαις ἐξηγήσεις θείεθας; ν' ἀρχὴν ἑπτὰ τήν ἀιωνίων τῆς ἐπιστήμης, λίγομεν αὐτήν ἀρχὴν ἐπὶ ψυχῆς ἡς ψυχή τὴν ημαλέαν ψυχήν εἰς ἀνάμνησιν τῶν καθόλου—κατὰ τάσιν δὲ τὴν ἑνοίκου ἔρημοι χρ' το ἐν Τιμαίῳ, ὅτι δ' ὄψεσθαι ἅ ἀκοὴ το τῆς φιλοσοφίας ἐποίησαμεθα γένης, διότι ἐν τῶν ἀισθητῶν ἔσεν ἀναμνήσιν ἀριστομέθεα. Those things, which are inferior and secondy, are by no means the Principles or Causes of the more excellent; and tho' we admit the common interpretations, and allow Sense to be a Principle of Science, we must however call it a Principle, not as if it was the efficient
efficient Cause, but as it rouses our Soul to the Recollection of general Ideas—According to the same way of thinking is it said in the Timæus, that through the Sight and Hearing we acquire to ourselves Philosophy, because we pass from Objects of Sense to Reminiscence or Recollection.

And in another passage he observes—'Επειδὴ γὰρ πάραμορφον ἀγαλμάτι εἴσιν ἡ ᾑρχῆ, χάριν τῶν ὑλῶν ἔχουσα λόγον, ἐρεθίζομεν ὑπὸ τῶν αἰσθητῶν ἀναμμενομένων, ἐν ἑνδον ἔχει λόγων, ὡς τότες προθάλληται. For in as much as the Soul, by containing the Principles of all Beings, is a sort of omnisform Representation or Exemplar; when it is roused by objects of Sense, it recollects those Principles, which it contains within, and brings them forth.

Georgius Gemistus, otherwise called Pletho, writes upon the same subject in the following manner. Τὴν ψυχὴν θαυμάσιοι οἱ τὰ έιδή τιθέμενοι ἀναλαμβάνοντες έστηκαί τάς ἐν τάς αἰσθητῆς λόγως, ἀκριβίσεις τότες ἔχοντας καὶ τελεώτερον ἐν εαυτῷ ἴχειν, ἡ ἐν τάς αἰσθητῆς ἔχωσι. Τὸ ἐν τελεώτερον γάρ τῷ ακριβίσεις ἐκ ἄν απὸ τῶν αἰσθητῶν ἴχειν τὴν ψυχήν, ὅταν μὴ εἴσιν ἐν αὐτοῖς. Οὐ δ’ αὖ μηδὲν αἰλάθη ὃν αὐτὸν ἵκει αὐτῆς διανοεῖσθαι.
Ch. IV. their Ideas, or intelligible Forms. Were it otherwise, there could be no intercourse between

νοεῖσθαι καὶ γὰρ ἑσυχάζειν τὴν ψυχὴν μεθαμβητικά, τὸ διανοεῖσθαι τάς γὰρ ἔννοιας τῶν ἰδεῶν ὑπὸ μὴ ὑπάντων ἀλλ' ὑπάντων μὲν, ἀλλὰ δὲ κατ' ἀλλὰν εἶναι συνθέσεις τινὰς, ἡ κατὰ τὸ ὑπόθον γνωριμίας. Δείησθαι δὲ αἱ ἔννοιαι τῶν φύσεως τολμῶν ἐπὶ κρείττονος τὰ τῆς τελεωτέρας ἀφήνειν τῇ ψυχῇ τὸ τελεωτέρου τῶν ἐν τοῖς ἀνθρώποις λόγοις. Those who suppose IDEAL FORMS, say that the Soul, when she assumes, for the purposes of Science, those Proportions, which exist in sensible objects, possesses them with a superior accuracy and perfection, than that to which they attain in those sensible objects. Now this superior Perfection or Accuracy the Soul cannot have from sensible objects, as it is in fact not in them; nor yet can she conceive it herself as from herself, without its having existence any where else. For the Soul is not formed so as to conceive that, which has existence no where, since even such opinions, as are false, are all of them compositions irregularly formed, not of mere Non-Beings, but of various real Beings, one with another. It remains therefore that this Perfection, which is superior to the Proportions existing in sensible objects, must descend to the Soul from some other Nature, which is by many degrees more excellent and perfect. Plet. de Aristotel. et Platonic. Philosop. Diff. Edit. Paris 1541.

The ΔΟΞΟΙ or PROPORTIONS, of which Gemius here speaks, mean not only those relative Proportions
between Man and Man, or (what is more Ch. IV. important) between Man and God.

For portions of Equality and Inequality, which exist in Quantity, (such as double, sesquialter, &c.) but in a larger sense, they may be extended to mathematical Lines, Angles, Figures, &c. of all which Λόγοι or Proportions, tho' we possest in the Mind the most clear and precise Ideas, yet it may be justly questioned, whether any one of them ever existed in the sensible World.

To these two Authors we may add Boethius, who, after having enumerated many acts of the Mind or Intellect, wholly distinct from Sensation, and independent of it, at length concludes,

Hæc est efficiens magis
Longè causā potentior,
Quam quae materiar modo
Impressās patitur notas.
Præcīdit tamen excitans,
Ac vires animi movens,
Vivō in corpore passivō.
Cum vel lux oculos ferit,
Vel vox auribus inſirept;
Tum mentis vigor excitus,
Quas intus species tenet,
Ad motus smilеis vocans,
Notis applicat exeris,
Intronsumque reconditis
Formis miset imagines.

De Confolat. Philosoph. L. V.
For what is Conversation between Man and Man?—It is a mutual intercourse of Speaking and Hearing.—To the Speaker, it is to teach; to the Hearer, it is to learn.—To the Speaker, it is to descend from Ideas to Words; to the Hearer, it is to ascend from Words to Ideas.—If the Hearer, in this ascent, can arrive at no Ideas, then is he said not to understand; if he ascend to Ideas dissimilar and heterogeneous, then is he said to misunderstand.—What then is requisite, that he may be said to understand?—That he should ascend to certain Ideas, treasured up within himself, correspondent and similar to those within the Speaker. The same may be said of a Writer and a Reader; as when any one reads to day or to morrow, or here or in Italy, what Euclid wrote in Greece two thousand years ago.

Now is it not marvelous, there should be so exact an Identity of our Ideas, if they were
were only generated from sensible Objects, Ch.IV.
infinite in number, ever changing, distant in Time, distant in Place, and no one Particular the same with any other?

Again, do we allow it possible for God to signify his will to Men; or for Men to signify their wants to God?—In both these cases there must be an Identity of Ideas, or else nothing is done either one way or the other. Whence then do these common Identical Ideas come?—Those of Men, it seems, come all from Sensation. And whence come God's Ideas?—Not surely from Sensation too; for this we can hardly venture to affirm, without giving to Body that notable Precedence of being prior to the Intellation of even God himself.—Let them then be original; let them be connate, and essential to the divine Mind.—If this be true, is it not a fortunate Event, that Ideas of corporeal rise, and others of mental, (things derived from subjects so totally distinct) should
HERMES.

Ch. IV. so happily co-incide in the same wonderful Identity?

Had we not better reason thus upon so abstruse a Subject? — Either all Minds have their Ideas derived; or all have them original; or some have them original, and some derived. If all Minds have them derived, they must be derived from something, which is itself not Mind, and thus we fall insensibly into a kind of Atheism. If all have them original, then are all Minds divine, an Hypothesis by far more plausible than the former. But if this be not admitted, than must one Mind (at least) have original Ideas, and the rest have them derived. Now supposing this last, whence are those Minds, whose Ideas are derived, most likely to derive them? — From Mind, or from Body? — From Mind, a thing homogeneous; or from Body, a thing heterogeneous? From Mind, such as (from the Hypothesis) has original
original Ideas; or from Body, which we Ch.IV. cannot discover to have any Ideas at all? (l) —An Examination of this kind, pursued with accuracy and temper, is the most probable method of solving these doubts. It is thus we shall be enabled with more assurance to decide, whether we are to admit the Doctrine of the Epicurean Poet,

Corpora natura animum constare, animamque;

or trust the Mantuan Bard, when he sings in divine numbers,

Igneus est ollis vigor, et caelestis origo
Seminibus.—

But

(l) notn de ediu soma genei wois yap av
ta anohta notn genehos; No Body produces Mind: for how should Things devoid of Mind produce Mind? Sallust de Diis et Mundo, c. 8.
Ch. IV. But it is now time, to quit these Speculations. Those, who would trace them farther, and have leisure for such studies, may perhaps find themselves led into regions of Contemplation, affording them prospects both interesting and pleasant. We have at present said as much as was requisite to our Subject, and shall therefore pass from hence to our concluding chapter.
Book the Third.

CHAP. V.

Subordination of Intelligence—Difference of Ideas, both in particular Men, and in whole Nations—Different Genius of different Languages—Character of the English, the Oriental, the Latin, and the Greek Languages—Superlative Excellence of the Last—Conclusion.

Original Truth (a), having the most intimate connection with the supreme Intelligence, may be said (as it were) to

(a) Those Philosophers, whose Ideas of Being and Knowledge are derived from Body and Sensation, have a short method to explain the nature of Truth. It is a factitious thing, made by every man for himself; which comes and goes, just as it is remembered and forgot; which in the order of things makes its appearance the last of any, being not only subsequent to sensible Objects, but even to our Sensations of them. According to this Hypothesis, there are many Truths, which have been, and are no longer; others, that will be, and have not
Ch. V. to shine with unchangeable splendor, enlightening throughout the Universe every possible Subject, by nature susceptible of its benign influence. Passions and other obstacles may prevent indeed its efficacy, as clouds and vapours may obscure the Sun; but it self neither admits Diminution, nor Change, because the Darkness respects only particular Percipients. Among these therefore we must look for ignorance and

not been yet; and multitudes, that possibly may never exist at all.

But there are other Reasoners, who must surely have had very different notions; those I mean, who represent Truth not as the last, but the first of Beings; who call it immutable, eternal, omnipresent; Attributes, that all indicate something more than human. To these it must appear somewhat strange, how men should imagine, that a crude account of the method how they perceive Truth, was to pass for an account of Truth itself; as if to describe the road to London, could be called a Description of that Metropolis.

For my own part, when I read the detail about Senses and Reflection, and am taught the process at large how my Ideas are all generated, I seem to view the
and error, and for that Subordination of Ch. V. Intelligence, which is their natural conseq-

We have daily experience in the Works of Art, that a partial Knowledge will suffice for Contemplation, tho' we know not enough, to profess ourselves Artists. Much more is this true, with respect to Nature; and well for mankind is it found to

to

the human Soul in the light of a Crucible, where Truths are produced by a kind of logical Chemistry. They may consist (for aught we know) of natural materials, but are as much creatures of our own, as a Bolus or Elixir.

If Milton by his Urania intended to represent Truth, he certainly referred her to a much more ancient, as well as a far more noble origin.

—— Heav'nly born!

Before the hills appear'd, or fountains flow'd,
Thou with eternal Wisdom didst converse,
Wisdom thy Sister; and with her didst play
In presence of th' almighty Father, pleas'd
With thy celestial Song. ——— P. I. VII.

to be true, else never could we attain any natural Knowledge at all. For if the constitutive Proportions of a Clock are so subtle, that few conceive them truly, but the Artist himself; what shall we say to those seminal Proportions, which make the essence and character of every natural Subject?—Partial views, the Imperfections of Sense; Inattention, Idleness, the turbulence of Passions; Education, local Sentiments, Opinions, and Belief, conspire in many instances to furnish us with Ideas, some too general, some too partial, and (what is worse than all this) with many that are erroneous, and contrary to Truth. These it behoves us to correct as far as possible, by cool suspense and candid examination.

And thus by a connection perhaps little expected, the Cause of Letters, and that
that of Virtue appear to co-incide, it Ch. V. being the business of both to examine our Ideas, and to amend them by the Standard of Nature and of Truth (b).

In this important Work, we shall be led to observe, how Nations, like single Men, have their peculiar Ideas; how these peculiar Ideas become the GENIUS OF THEIR LANGUAGE, since the Symbol must of course correspond to its Archetype (c); how

(b) How useful to Ethic Science, and indeed to Knowledge in general, a Grammatical Disquisition into the Etymology and Meaning of Words was esteemed by the chief and ablest Philosophers, may be seen by consulting Plato in his Cratylus; Xenoph. Mem. IV. 5. 6. Arrian. Epist. I. 17. II. 10. Marc. Anton. III. 11. V. 8. X. 8.

Ch. V. how the wisest Nations, having the most and best Ideas, will consequently have the best and most copious Languages; how others, whose Languages are motley and compounded, and who have borrowed from different countries different Arts and Practices, discover by Words, to whom they are indebted for Things.

To illustrate what has been said, by a few examples. We Britons in our time have been remarkable borrowers, as our multiform Language may sufficiently shew. Our Terms in polite Literature prove, that this came from Greece; our Terms in Music and Painting, that these came from Italy; our Phrases in Cookery and War, that we learnt these from the French; and our Phrases in Navigation, that we were taught by the Flemings and Low Dutch. These many and very different Sources of our Language may be the cause, why it is so deficient in Regularity and Analogy. Yet we have this advantage to compensate the defect,
defect, that what we want in Elegance, we Ch. V. gain in Copiousness, in which last respect few Languages will be found superior to our own.

Let us pass from ourselves to the Nations of the East. The (d) Eastern World, from the earliest days, has been at all times the Seat of enormous Monarchy. On its natives fair Liberty never shed its genial influence. If at any time civil Discords arose among them (and arise there did innumerable) the contest was never about the Form of their Government; (for this was an object, of which the Combatants had no conception;) it was all from the poor motive of, who should be their Master, whether

(d) Διὰ γὰρ τὸ δυσλεξίατες οίως τα ἢθη οἱ μεν Βαρβάροι τῶν Ἑλλήνων, οἱ δὲ χείρ τῆν Ἀσίαν τῶν χείρ τῆν Εὐρωπῆς, υπομειναὶ τὴν δεσποτικὴν αἰχὴν, οὐκ ἔχεισαίνοντες. For the Barbarians by being more lavish in their Manners than the Greeks, and those of Asia than those of Europe, submit to despotic Government without murmuring or discontent. Arift. Polit. III. 4.
whether a Cyrus or an Artaxerxes, a Mahomet or a Muslupha.

SUCH was their Condition, and what was the consequence?—Their Ideas became consonant to their servile State, and their Words became consonant to their servile Ideas. The great Distinction, forever in their sight, was that of Tyrant and Slave; the most unnatural one conceivable, and the most susceptible of pomp, and empty exaggeration. Hence they talked of Kings as Gods, and of themselves, as the meanest and most abject Reptiles. Nothing was either great or little in moderation, but every Sentiment was heightened by incredible Hyperbole. Thus tho' they sometimes ascended into the Great and Magnificent (e), they as frequently degenerated

---

(e) The truest Sublime of the East may be found in the Scriptures, of which perhaps the principal cause is the intrinsic Greatness of the Subjects there treated; the Creation of the Universe, the Dispensations of divine Providence, &c.
nerated into the Tumid and Bombast. The Greeks too of Asia became infected by their neighbours, who were often at times not only their neighbours, but their masters; and hence that Luxuriance of the Asiatic Stile, unknown to the chaste eloquence and purity of Athens. But of the Greeks we forbear to speak now, as we shall speak of them more fully, when we have first considered the Nature or Genius of the Romans.

And what sort of People may we pronounce the Romans?—A Nation engaged in wars and commotions, some foreign, some domestic, which for seven hundred years wholly engrossed their thoughts. Hence therefore their Language became, like their Ideas, copious in all Terms expressive of things political, and well adapted to the purposes both of History and popular Eloquence.—But what was their Philosophy?—As a Nation, it was none, if we may credit their ablest Writers. And hence the Unfitness of their Language
Ch. V. to this Subjed; a defect, which even Cicero is compelled to confess, and more fully makes appear, when he writes Philosophy himself, from the number of terms, which he is obliged to invent (f). Virgil seems

(f) See Cic. de Fin. I. C. I. 2, 3. III. C. 1, 2, 4, &c. but in particular Tus. Disp. I. 3. where he says, Philosophia jacit usque ad hanc etatem, nec ullam habuit human Litterarum Latinarum; quae illustranda et excitanda nobis est; ut si, &c. See also Tus. Disp. IV. 3. and Acad. I. 2. where it appears, that 'till Cicero applied himself to the writing of Philosophy, the Romans had nothing of the kind in their language, except some mean performances of Amaeaxius the Epicurean, and others of the same sect. How far the Romans were indebted to Cicero for Philosophy, and with what industry, as well as eloquence, he cultivated the Subject, may be seen not only from the titles of those Works that are now lost, but much more from the many noble ones still fortunately preserved.

The Epicurean Poet Lucretius, who flourished nearly at the same time, seems by his silence to have over-looked the Latin writers of his own sect; deriving all his Philosophy, as well as Cicero, from Grecian Sources; and, like him, acknowledging the difficulty of writing Philosophy in Latin, both from the Poverty of the Tongue, and from the Novelty of the Subject.
seems to have judged the most truly of his Countrymen, when admitting their inferiority in the more elegant Arts, he concludes at last with his usual majesty,

\[\text{Tu}\]

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Nec me animi fallit, Graiorum obscura reperta} \\
\text{Difficile inlustare Latinis versibus esse,} \\
(Multa novis rebus presertim quonam fit agendum,) \\
\text{Propter egestatem linguæ et rerum notavitatem:} \\
\text{Sed tua me virtus tamen, et sperata voluptas} \\
\text{Suavis amicitiae quemvis perferre laborem} \\
\text{Suadet— Lucr. I. 137.}
\end{align*}
\]

In the same age, Varro, among his numerous works, wrote some in the way of Philosophy; as did the Patriot Brutus, a Treatise concerning Virtue, much applauded by Cicero; but these Works are now lost.

Soon after the Writers above-mentioned came Horace, some of whose Satires and Epistles may be justly ranked among the most valuable pieces of Latin Philosophy, whether we consider the purity of their Stile, or the great Address, with which they treat the Subject.

After Horace, tho' with as long an interval as from the days of Augustus to those of Nero, came the Satirist Persius, the friend and disciple of the Stoic Cornutus; to whose precepts as he did honour by his virtuous Life,
so his works, tho' small, shew an early proficiency in the Science of Morals. Of him it may be said, that he is almost the single difficult writer among the Latin Classics, whose meaning has sufficient merit, to make it worth while to labour thro' his obscurities.

In the same degenerate and tyrannic period, lived also Seneca; whose character, both as a Man and a Writer, is discussed with great accuracy by the noble Author of the Characteristics, to whom we refer.

Under a milder Dominion, that of Hadrian and the Antonines, lived Aulus Gellius, or (as some call him) Agellius, an entertaining Writer in the miscellaneous way; well skilful in Criticism and Antiquity; who tho' he can hardly be entitled to the name of a Philosopher, yet deserves not to pass unmentioned here, from the curious fragments of Philosophy interspersed in his works.

With Aulus Gellius we range Macrobius, not because a Contemporary, (for he is supposed to have lived under
Book the Third.

From considering the Romans, let us Ch. V. pass to the Greeks. The Grecian Common-

under Honorius and Theodosius) but from his near resemblance, in the character of a Writer. His Works, like the other's, are miscellaneous; filled with Mythology and antient Literature, some Philosophy being intermixed. His Commentary upon the Somnium Scipionis of Cicero may be considered as wholly of the philosophical kind.

In the same age with Aulus Gellius, flourished Apuleius of Madaura in Africa, a Platonic Writer, whose Matter in general far exceeds his perplexed and affected Stile, too conformable to the false Rhetoric of the Age when he lived.

Of the same Country, but of a later Age, and a harsher Stile, was Martianus Capella, if indeed he deserve not the name rather of a Philologus, than of a Philosopher.

After Capella, we may rank Chalcidius the Platonic, tho' both his Age, and Country, and Religion are doubtful. His manner of writing is rather more agreeable than that of the two preceding, nor does he appear to be their inferior in the knowledge of Philosophy, his work being a laudable Commentary upon the Timæus of Plato.
Ch. V. **Commonwealths**, while they maintained their Liberty, were the most heroic Confederacy, that ever existed. They were the

The last *Latin* Philosopher was *Boethius*, who was descended from some of the noblest of the *Roman* Families, and was Consul in the beginning of the sixth Century. He wrote many philosophical Works, the greater part in the *Logical* way. But his *Ethic* piece, *On the Confutation of Philosophy*, and which is partly prose, and partly verse, deserves great encomiums both for the Matter, and for the Stile; in which last he approaches the Purity of a far better age than his own, and is in all respects preferable to those crabbed *Africans* already mentioned. By command of *Theodoric* king of the *Goths*, it was the hard fate of this worthy Man to suffer death; with whom the *Latin Tongue*, and the last remains of *Roman Dignity*, may be said to have sunk in the western World.

There were other *Romans*, who left *Philosophical* Writings; such as *Musonius Rufus*, and the two Emperors, *Marcus Antoninus* and *Julian*; but as these preferred the use of the *Greek* Tongue to their own, they can hardly be considered among the number of *Latin* Writers.

And so much (by way of sketch) for the *Latin Authors of Philosophy*; a small number for so vast an Empire, if we consider them as all the product of near six successive centuries.
the politest, the bravest, and the wisest of Ch. V. men. In the short space of little more than a Century, they became such State-men, Warriors, Orators, Historians, Phys-cians, Poets, Critics, Painters, Sculptors, Architects, and (last of all) Philosophers, that one can hardly help considering that Golden Period, as a Providential Event in honour of human Nature, to shew to what perfection the Species might ascend (g).

Now

(g) If we except Homer, Hesiod, and the Lyric Poets, we hear of few Grecian Writers before the expedition of Xerxes. After that Monarch had been defeated, and the dread of the Persian power was at an end, the Effulgence of Grecian Genius (if I may use the expression) broke forth, and shone till the time of Alexander the Macedonian, after whom it disappeared, and never rose again. This is that Golden Period spoken of above. I do not mean that Greece had not many writers of great merit subsequent to that period, and especially of the philosophic kind; but the Great, the Striking, the Sublime (call it as you please) attained at that time to a height, to which it never could ascend in any after age.
The same kind of fortune befel the people of Rome. When the Punic wars were ended, and Carthage their dreaded Rival was no more, then (as Horace informs us) they began to cultivate the politer arts. It was soon after this, their great Orators, and Historians, and Poets arose, and Rome, like Greece, had her Golden Period, which lasted to the death of Othavius Cæsar.

I call these two Periods, from the two greatest Geniuses that flourished in each, one the Socratic Period, the other the Ciceronian.

There are still farther analogies subsisting between them. Neither Period commenced, as long as solicitude for the common welfare engaged men’s attentions, and such wars impended, as threatened their destruction by Foreigners and Barbarians. But when once these fears were over, a general security soon ensued, and instead of attending to the arts of defence and self-preservation, they began to cultivate those of Elegance and Pleasure. Now, as these naturally produced a kind of wanton insolence (not unlike the vicious temper of high fed animals) so by this the bands of union were insensibly dissolved. Hence then among the
conformable to their transcendent and Ch. V. universal Genius. Where Matter so abounded,

the Greeks that fatal Peloponnesian War, which together with other wars, its immediate consequence, broke the confederacy of their Commonwealths; wasted their strength; made them jealous of each other; and thus paved a way for the contemptible kingdom of Macedon to enslave them all, and ascend in a few years to universal Monarchy.

A like luxuriance of prosperity sowed discord among the Romans; raised those unhappy contests between the Senate and the Gracchi; between Silla and Marius; between Pompey and Caesar; till at length, after the last struggle for Liberty by those brave Patriots Brutus and Cassius at Philippi, and the subsequent defeat of Antony at Actium, the Romans became subjects to the dominion of a Fellow-Citizen.

It must indeed be confessed, that after Alexander and Octavius had established their Monarchies, there were many bright Geniuses, who were eminent under their Government. Aristotle maintained a friendship and epistolary correspondence with Alexander. In the time of the same Monarch lived Theophrastus, and the Cynic, Diogenes. Then also Demosthenes and Aeschines spoke their two celebrated Orations. So likewise in the time of Octavius, Virgil wrote his Eneid, and with Horace
Ch. V. abounded, Words followed of course, and those exquisite in every kind, as the Ideas for which they flowed. And hence it followed, there was not a Subject to be found, which could not with propriety be expressed in Greek.

**Here were Words and Numbers for the Humour of an Aristophanes;** for the native

*Horace, Varius,* and many other fine Writers, partook of his protection and royal munificence. But then it must be remembered, that these men were bred and educated in the principles of a free Government. It was hence they derived that high and manly spirit, which made them the admiration of after-ages. The Successors and Forms of Government left by Alexander and Octavius, soon stop the growth of any thing farther in the kind. So true is that noble saying of Longinus—

Θεσσαλικον θανατον τα φθονοματα των μεγαλοφρονων η ΕΛΕΤΟΕΡΙΑ, κυ πεπληρασε, κα αμω διωθειν το \( \omegaγ\)έθυμων της προς δαλλιας ξηρος, κα της περι τα \( \omegaψ\)ερια \( \phi\)ιλοτιμικως. *It is Liberty that is formed to nurse the sentiments of great Geniuses*; *to inspire them with hope; to push forward the propensity of contest one with another, and the generous emulation of being the first in rank.*  

De Subl. Sect 44.
native Elegance of a Philemon or Me-Ch. V. 
nander; for the amorous Strains of a Min-
nermus or Sappho; for the rural Lays of a 
Theocritus or Bion; and for the sublime 
Conceptions of a Sophocles or Homer. The 
same in Prose. Here Isocrates was enabled 
to display his Art, in all the accuracy of 
Periods, and the nice counterpoise of 
Diction. Here Demosthenes found mate-
rials for that nervous Composition, that 
manly force of unaffected Eloquence, 
which rushed, like a torrent, too impe-
tuous to be withstood.

Who were more different in exhi-
biting their Philosophy, than Xenophon, 
Plato, and his disciple, Aristotle? Dif-
f erent, I say, in their character of Com-
position; for as to their Philosophy itself, 
it was in reality the same. Aristotle, 
strict, methodic, and orderly; subtle in 
Thought; sparing in Ornament; with 
little address to the Passions or Ima-
gination; but exhibiting the whole with
Ch. V. such a pregnant brevity, that in every sentence we seem to read a page. How exquisitely is this all performed in Greek? Let those, who imagine it may be done as well in another Language, satisfy themselves either by attempting to translate him, or by perusing his translations already made by men of learning. On the contrary, when we read either Xenophon or Plato, nothing of this method and strict order appears. The Formal and Didactic is wholly dropt. Whatever they may teach, it is without professing to be teachers; a train of Dialogue and truly polite Address, in which, as in a Mirror, we behold human Life, adorned in all its colours of Sentiment and Manners.

And yet though these differ in this manner from the Stagirite, how different are they likewise in character from each other? — Plato, copious, figurative,
tive, and majestic; intermixing at times Ch. V. the facetious and satiric; enriching his Works with Tales and Fables, and the mystic Theology of ancient times. Xenophon, the Pattern of perfect simplicity; every where smooth, harmonious, and pure; declining the figurative, the marvelous, and the mystic; ascending but rarely into the Sublime; nor then so much trusting to the colours of Stile, as to the intrinsic dignity of the Sentiment itself.

The Language in the mean time, in which He and Plato wrote, appears to suit so accurately with the Stile of both, that when we read either of the two, we cannot help thinking, that it is he alone, who has hit its character, and that it could not have appeared so elegant in any other manner.

And thus is the Greek Tongue, from its Propriety and Universality, made

E e 4
Ch. V. for all that is great, and all that is beautiful, in every Subject, and under every Form of writing.

Grauis ingenium, Grauis dedit ore rotundo
Musa loqui.

It were to be wished, that those amongst us, who either write or read, with a view to employ their liberal leisure (for as to such, as do either from views more fordid, we leave them, like Slaves, to their destined drudgery) it were to be wished, I say, that the liberal (if they have a relish for letters) would inspect the finished Models of Grecian Literature; that they would not waste those hours, which they cannot recall, upon the meaner productions of the French and English Press; upon that fungous growth of Novels and of Pamphlets, where, it is to be feared, they rarely find any
any rational pleasure, and more rarely Ch. V. still, any solid improvement.

To be competently skilled in antient learning, is by no means a work of such insuperable pains. The very progress itself is attended with delight, and resembles a Journey through some pleasant Country, where every mile we advance, new charms arise. It is certainly as easy to be a Scholar, as a Gamester, or many other Characters equally illiberal and low. The same application, the same quantity of habit will fit us for one, as completely as for the other. And as to those who tell us, with an air of seeming wisdom, that it is Men, and not Books, we must study to become knowing; this I have always remarked from repeated Experience, to be the common consolation and language of Dunces. They shelter their ignorance under a few bright Examples, whose transcendent abilities, without the common
Ch. V. common helps, have been sufficient of themselves to great and important Ends. But alas!

Decipit exemplar vitiiis imitabile—

In truth, each man's Understanding, when ripened and mature, is a composite of natural Capacity, and of super-induced Habit. Hence the greatest Men will be necessarily those, who possess the best Capacities, cultivated with the best Habits. Hence also moderate Capacities, when adorned with valuable Science, will far transcend others the most acute by nature, when either neglected, or applied to low and base purposes. And thus for the honour of Culture and good Learning, they are able to render a man, if he will take the pains, intrinsically more excellent than his natural Superiors.

And
And so much at present as to general Ch. V. Ideas; how we acquire them; whence they are derived; what is their Nature; and what their connection with Language. So much likewise as to the Subject of this Treatise, Universal Grammar.

End of the Third Book.
ADVERTISEMENT.

The following Notes are either Translations of former Notes, or Additions to them. The additional are chiefly Extracts from Greek Manuscripts, which (as the Author has said already concerning others of the same kind) are valuable both for their Rarity, and for their intrinsic Merit.
ADDITIONAL NOTES.

PAG. 95.—TO STOP, &c.] The Quotation from Proclus in the Note may be thus rendered—THAT THING IS AT REST, WHICH FOR A TIME PRIOR AND SUBSEQUENT IS IN THE SAME PLACE, both itself, and its Parts.

P. 105. In the Note, for γιγνόμενον read γενόμενον, and render the passage thus—For by this faculty (namely the faculty of Sense) we neither know the Future, nor the Past, but the Present only.

P. 106. NOTE (d)] The passage of Philoponus here referred to, but by mistake omitted, has respect to the notion of beings corporeal and sensible, which were said to be nearly approaching to Non-Entities. The Author explains this among other reasons, by the following—Πῶς δὲ τοῖς μὴ ἦσον γεννηκαίες; Ἡρωτοῦ μὲν, ἐπειδὴ ἐνταῦθα τὸ χαρακτήριον ἐστὶν, καὶ τὸ μέλλον, ταῦτα δὲ μὴ ἐνταῦθα τὸ μὲν γὰρ ἔργα νοεῖσθαι, ἵνα ἐκτὸς ἔστιν, τὸ δὲ ἐπὶ ἐστιν ἐκεῖνη συμπαράστασιν δε τῷ χρόνῳ τὰ φύσικα ἁπάντα, μᾶλλον δὲ τὰς κινήσεις αὐτῶν χαρακτηρισθῆναι ἐστὶν οὐ χρόνος. How therefore is it that they approach nearly to Non-Entities? In the first place, because here (where they exist) exist the Past and the Future, and these are Non-Entities; for the one is vanished, and is no more, the other is not as yet. Now all natural Substances pass away along with Time, or rather it is upon their Motion that Time is an Attendant.
P. 119—in the Note here subjoined mention is made of the Real Now, or Instant, and its efficacy. To which we may add, that there is not only a necessary connection between Existence and the Present Instant, because no other point of Time can properly be said to be, but also between Existence and Life, because whatever lives, by the same reason necessarily is. Hence Sophocles, speaking of Time present, elegantly says of it—

——και διὸ τῷ ζωῆι, καὶ δομέων τὸν

The Living, and Now present Time.

Trachin. V. 1185.

P. 227.—The Passage in Virgil, of which Servius here speaks, is a description of Turnus's killing two brothers, Amicus and Diores; after which the Poet says of him,

——curru obsidīa Duorum
Suspendit capita——

This, literally translated, is—he hung up on his chariot the heads of two persons, which were cut off, whereas the Sense requires, of the Two persons, that is to say, of Amicus and Diores. Now this by Amhorum would have been expressed properly, as Amhorum means The Two; by Duorum is expressed improperly, as it means only Two indefinitely.

P. 259.—The Passage in Note (o) from Themistius, may be thus rendered—Nature in many instances appears to make her transition by little and little, so that in some Beings it may be doubted, whether they are Animal, or Vegetable.
P. 294. Note (c)—There are in the number of things many, which have a most known Existence, but a most unknown Essence; such for example as Motion, Place, and more than either of them, Time. The Existence of each of these is known and indisputable, but what their Essence is, or Nature, is among the most difficult things to discern. The Soul also is in the same Class: that it is something, is most evident, but what it is; is a matter not so easy to learn: Alex. Aphrod. p. 142.


P. 368.—in the Note—Yet so held the Philosopher of Malmesbury, and the Author of the Essay, &c.]

Philoponus, from the Philosophy of Plato and Pythagoras, seems to have far excelled these Moderns in his account of Wisdom or Philosophy, and its Attributes, or essential Characters.—"Idion γὰρ Φιλοσοφίας τὸ ἐν τοῖς πολλοῖς ἐχθαί διάφορα δεῖξαι τὴν κοινωνίαν; καὶ τὸ ἐν τοῖς πολλοῖς ἐχθαί κοινωνίαν δεῖξαι τὴν διαφέρουσαν; γὰρ δυχερές τὸ δεῖξαι φάτνης (lege Φάτνης) καὶ πειρεταρής κοινωνίαν, (σασί γὰρ τεφρίπων) ἀλλ' ὡς (lege ὅπω) τὸ διάφορον τέτων ἐπιεῖν ἢδὲ κυνὸς ἢ ἕπει διάφορον ἀλλ' τι κοινὸν ἐχθαίν. It is the proper business of Philosophy to shew in many things, which have Difference, what is their Common Character; and in many things, which have a Common Character, through what it is they differ.
is indeed no difficult matter to shew the common Character of a Wood-Pigeon and a Dove, (for this is evident to every one) but rather to tell where lies the Difference; nor to tell the Difference between a Dog and a Horse, but rather to shew, what they possess in common. Philop. Com. MS. in Nicomach. Arithm.

P. 379—they are more exquisite than, &c.] The Words of Aristotle, here referred to, are these—μολλοῦ δ' ἐστὶν ὧν ἄνεκα κε ἄλον ἕν τοῖς φύσεως ἐγγοίς, ἦ ἐν τοῖς τῆς τεχνῆς. The Principles of Design and Beauty are more in the Works of Nature, than they are in those of Art.

P. 379.—we must of necessity admit a mind, &c.] The following quotation, taken from the third book of a manuscript Comment of Proclus on the Parmenides of Plato, is here given for the sake of those, who have curiosity with regard to the doctrine of Ideas, as held by ancient Philosophers.

Εἰ δὲ ἐν συντόμως ἔπεισWifi τὴν αἰτίαν τῆς τῶν ἱδεῶν ὑποθέσεως, δὴ ἦν ἐκείνως ἡρετα, ἐπιθέον ὅτι τὰυτα οὐκ ἄλοιπα ἕνα ἄρατα, ἵππαις καὶ ὑπὸ σειλῆνα, ἦ ἀπὸ ταυλοματώ ἔσον, καὶ κατ' αἰτίαν ἀλλ' ἀπὸ ταυλοματον αἴδυνατον ἐκ λόγῳ ἐν τοῖς ὑστεροῖς τα ὑστεροῖς, ἐκς καὶ λόγος, καὶ αἰτία, καὶ τὰ αἰτίας, κὰ ἐν τὰ ἀποτελέσματα, κρειττῶν τῶν ἀρχῶν, πρὸς τὸ καὶ τὸ ἄφθατον ὁ λαμπρότερος· δεῦ πρὸς τὰν κατὰ συμβεβηκὸς αἰτίαν εἶται τὰ καθ' αἰτίας, τὰς χρὴ ἐκεῖνα τὸ κατὰ συμβεβηκὸς ὡσεὶ τὰ ἀπὸ ταυλοματον ὑφεϊς ἐπορευταῖς ἦν ἐν τὸ κατὰ αἰτίας, εἰ γὰρ ἀπὸ ταυλοματον τὰ θειώτατα ἐν τῶν Φανερῶν. If there-
therefore we are to relate concisely the Cause, why the Hypothesis of Ideas pleased them (namely Parmenides, Zeno, Socrates, &c.) we must begin by observing that all the various visible objects around us, the heavenly as well as the sublunary, are either from Chance, or according to a Cause. From Chance is impossible; for then the more excellent things (such as Mind, and Reason, and Cause, and the Effects of Cause) will be among those things that come last, and so the Endings of things will be more excellent than their Beginnings. To which too may be added what Aristotle says; that essential Causes ought to be prior to accidental, in as much as every accidental Cause is a Deviation from them; so that whatever is the Effect of such essential Cause [as is indeed every work of Art and human Ingenuity] must needs be prior to that which is the Effect of Chance, even tho' we were to refer to Chance the most divine of visible objects, [the Heavens themselves].

The Philosopher, having thus proved a definite Cause of the World in opposition to Chance, proceeds to shew that from the Unity and concurrent Order of things this Cause must be One. After which he goes on, as follows.—

---

'Ει μὲν ἀν ἀλόγον ταύτο, ἄτοπου. ἔσαι γάρ τι πάλιν τῶν ὑστέρων τῆς τάτων αἰτίας κρείττου, τὸ κατὰ λόγον κυ γνώσιν ποιόν, ἢσω τῷ Παντὸς ὑμ, κῇ τῇ "Ολὴ μέρος, ἢ ἐσὶν ἀπ' αἰτίας ἄλογον τοιότο. 'Ει δὲ λόγον ἔχου, κῇ αὐτῷ γινόσκου, οἴδει ἐκατὸ ὡς τῶν ἀντων ἀιτίον ὑμ, ἢ τά τῇ ἁμαρτή, ἀριστος τῆς ἐκατῇ φύσιν. 'Ει δὲ οἴδειν, ὅτι κατ' ἑσίαν ἐσὶ τῷ παντὸς αἰτίων, τῷ...
But if, on the contrary, the Cause of the Universe be a Cause, having Reason and knowing itself, it of course knows itself to be the Cause of all things; else being ignorant of this, it would be ignorant of its own nature. But if it know, that from its very Essence it is the Cause of the Universe, and if that, which knows one part of a Relation definitely, knows also of necessity the other, it knows for this reason definitely the thing of which it is the Cause. It knows therefore the Universe, and all things out of which the Universe is composed, of all which also it is the Cause. But if this be true, it is evident that by looking into itself, and by knowing itself, it knows what comes after itself, and is subsequent. It is therefore, through certain Reasons and Forms void of Matter that
that it knows those mundane Reasons and Forms, out of which the Universe is composed, and that the Universe is in it, as in a Cause, distinct from and without the Matter.

P. 380—agreeable to which Ideas these Works are fashioned, &c.] It is upon these Principles that Nicomachus in his Arithmetic, p. 7. calls the Supreme Being an 'Artifex'—ἐν τῇ τῷ τεχνίτῳ Θεῷ διανοίᾳ, in Dei artificis mente. Where Philoponus, in his manuscript Comment, observes as follows—τεχνιτῆς φοιτὶ τὸν Θεόν, ὡς πάνω τὰς πρῶτας αἰ-τίας ὑπὸ τὰς λόγους αὐτῶν ἔχοικα. He calls God an Artist, as possessing within himself the first Causes of all things, and their Reasons or Proportions. Soon after speaking of those Sketches, after which Painters work and finish their Pictures, he subjoins—أسماء ἑκείνη ιδον, ἐις τὰ τοιαύτα σκιαγραφήματα βλέποντες, ποι-έμεν τὸ δὲ τι, ἐπὶ ἡ οὐ δημιουργός, ὑπὸ ἐκείνα ἀπο-θείτων, τα τῆς πάντας κεκοσμήκεν ἄλλα ἰεύον, ὅτι τὰ μὲν τὸ δὲ σκιαγραφήματα ἀτελῆ ἐστὶ, ἐκείνοι δὲ οἱ ἐν τῷ Θεῷ λόγοι ἀρχιτυποὶ ἵπτανθείσοι ἐστὶν. As therefore we, looking upon such Sketches as these, make such and such particular things, so also the Creator, looking at those Sketches of his, bath formed and adorned with beauty all things here below. We must remember however, that the Sketches here are imperfect; but that the others, those Reasons or Proportions, which exist in God, are ARCHETYPAL and ALL-PERFECT.

It is according to this Philosophy, that Milton represents God, after he had created this visible World, contemplating
Proclus proves the Existence of these General Ideas or Universal Forms by the following Arguments.—

Proclui proclui proves the Existence of these General Ideas or Universal Forms by the following Arguments.—

Proclui that which operates merely by existing, and if that which operates merely by existing, operate from its own proper Essence, such Cause is primarily, what its Effect is secondarily, and that, which it is primarily, it giveeth to its Effect secondarily. It is thus that Fire both giveth Warmth to...
Additional Notes.

to something else, and is itself warm; that the Soul giveth Life, and possesseth Life; and this reasoning you may perceive to be true in all things whatever, which operate merely by existing. It follows therefore, that the Cause of the Universe, operating after this manner, is that primarily, which the World is secondarily. If therefore the World be the multitude of Forms of all Sorts, these Forms must also be primarily in the Cause of the World, for it was the same Cause, which constituted the Sun, and the Moon, and Man, and Horse, and in general all the Forms existing in the Universe. These therefore exist primarily in the Cause of the Universe; another Sun besides the apparent, another Man, and so with respect to every Form else. The Forms therefore, previous to the sensible and external Forms, and which according to this reasoning are their active and efficient Causes, are to be found pre-existing in that One and common Cause of all the Universe. Procli Com. MS. in Plat. Parmenid. L. 3.

We have quoted the above passages for the same reason, as the former; for the sake of those, who may have a curiosity to see a sample of this antient Philosophy, which (as some have held) may be traced up from Plato and Socrates to Parmenides, Pythagoras, and Orpheus himself.

If the Phrase, to operate merely by existing, should appear questionable, it must be explained upon a supposition, that in the Supreme Being no Attributes are secondary, intermittent, or adventitious, but all original, ever perfect and essential. See p. 162, 359.
Additional Notes.

That we should not therefore think of a blind unconscious operation, like that of Fire here alluded to, the Author had long before prepared us, by uniting Knowledge with natural Efficacy, where he forms the Character of these Divine and Creative Ideas.

But let us hear him in his own Language.—αλλά εἴπερ ἑξιλομεν τὴν ἰδιότητα αὐτῶν (Sc. Ιδεῶν) ἀφορίσασθαι διὰ τῶν ψυχικῶν λόγων λάθωμεν τὸ αὐτῷ τῇ οἷς ποιητικῶν, ὥστε ηὐ ποιησί: ἀπὸ δὲ τῶν τεχνικῶν τὸ ψυχικοῦ, ὡς τοιοῦτον ἐννοούμεν Φῶ-μεν αἰτίας εἶναι τὰς Ιδεὰς δημιουργικὰς ἀμα και νοερὰς πάντων τῶν κατὰ Φύσιν ἀποτελεμένων. But if we should choose to define the peculiar character of Ideas by things more known to us than themselves, let us assume from natural Principles the Power of effecting, merely by existing, all the things that they effect; and from artificial Principles the Power of comprehending all that they effect, although they did not effect them merely by existing; and then uniting these two, let us say that Ideas are at once the efficient and intelligent Causes of all things produced according to Nature. From which the second of the same Comment.

The Schoolman, Thomas Aquinas, a subtle and acute writer, has the following sentence, perfectly corresponding with this Philosophy. Res omnes comparantur ad Divinium Intellectum, sed artificiata ad Artem.
The Verses of Orpheus on this subject may be found in the tract De Mundo, ascribed to Aristotle, p. 23. Edit. Sylburg.

Ζηὺς ἄφον γένετο, Ζεὺς κ. τ. λ.

P. 391—Where all things lie enveloped, &c.

—ὅσα τίρ ἐστὶ ΤΑ ΠΟΛΛΑ κατὰ δὴ τινα με- 

μερισμοῖς, τοσοῦτα ὥς ΤΟ ΕΝ ἵκειο πρὸ τῷ μερισμῷ κατὰ τὸ ψάλη ἀμερίζει· καὶ γὰρ ἐν, ὡς ἐλάχιστον, να- 

θάπτερ ὁ Σπεύδηππος ἐδοξέ λέγεν, ἀλλ' ΕΝ, ΩΣ 

ΠΑΝΤΑ. As numerous as is the Multitude of Individuals by Partition, so numerous also is that Principle of Unity by universal Impartibility. For it is not One, as a minimum is one, (according to what Speucippus seemed to say,) but it is One, as being all things. Damascius ἦτο Ἀρχων, MS.

P. 408—The wisest Nations—the most copious Languages.] It is well observed by Muretus—Nulli unquam, qui res ignorarent, nomina, quibus eas exprimerent, quaesierunt. Var. Lect. VI. 1.

P. 411.—But what was their Philosophy?] The same Muretus has the following passage upon the Roman Taste for Philosophy.—

Ecst autem illi, et opulentii, et omnium gentium victores 

Romani, in petendis honoribus, et in presbendi civibus, 

et in exteris nationibus verbo componendis, re compilandis 

occupati, philosophandi curam servis aut libertis suis, et 

Grèceulis eurientibus relinquebant. Ipsi, quod ab avari-

tia,
tia, quod ab ambitione, quod a voluptatibus reliquum erat temporis, ejus si partem aliquam aut ad audiendo Graecum quempiam philosophum, aut ad aliquem de philosophia libellum vel legendum vel scribendum contulissent, jam se ad eruditionis culmen pervenisse, jam viam a se et profligata tam jacere Graeciam somniabant. Var. Lect. VI. i.
INDEX.

A.

ADJECTIVE, how it differs from other Attributes, such as the Verb, and the Participle, 186. verbal, 187. pronominal, 189. strictly speaking can have no Genders, — — — 190

ADVERBS, their character and use, 192 to 194. Adverbs of Intention and Remission, 195. of Comparison, 196 to 199. of Time, and Place, and Motion, 204, 205. made out of Prepositions, 205. Adverbs of Interrogation, 206. affinity between these last, and the Pronoun relative, 206 to 208. Adverbs derived from every Part of Speech, 209. found in every Predicament, 210. called by the Stoics Ἀνδεῦκτα, — — — — ibid.

Æschines, — — — — 419

Alexander Aphrodisiensis, 294, 310, 433. his account of Phantasy or Imagination. — 357

Alexander and Thais, 71. his influence upon the Greek Genius, — — — 419, 420

Amafanius, — — — — 412

Ammonius, his account of Speech, and its relations, 4. of the progress of human Knowledge from Complex to Simple, 10. of the Soul's two principal Powers, 17. of the Species of Sentences, ibid. his notion of God, 55. quoted, 59. his notion of a Verb, 87, 193. his notion of Time, 100. illustrates from Homer the Species of Modes or Sentences, 145. quoted, 154. his notion of conjunctive Particles, and of the Unity which they produce, 241. quoted, 278. his account of Sound, Voice, Articulation, &c. 321, 328.
INDEX.

328. of the distinction between a Symbol and a Re.
semblance, 331. what he thought the human Body
with respect to the Soul, 334. his triple order of
Ideas or Forms,

Analyfis and Synthefis, 2, 3, 367. analysis of Cafes,
275, 276, 285

ANAXAGORAS

ANTHOLOGIA GR.

ANTONINUS, — 183, 310, 405, 407, 416

APOILONIUS, the Grammarian, explains the Species
of Words by the Species of Letters, 27. his elegant
name for the Noun and Verb, 33. quoted, 63. his
idea of a Pronoun, 65, 67. quoted, 70. explains the
Distinction and Relation between the Article and
the Pronoun, 73, 74. his two Species of Δείγμα
Indication, 77. holds a wide difference between the
Prepositive and Subjunctive Articles, 78. explains
the nature of the Subjunctive Article, 80. corrects
Homer from the doctrine of Enclitics, 84, 85. his
notion of that Tense called the Preteritum perfectum,
129. holds the Soul's disposition peculiarly ex-
plained by Verbs, 141. his notion of the Indicative
Mode, 151. of the Future, implied in all Impera-
tives, 155. explains the power of those past Tenses,
found in the Greek Imperatives, 156. his Idea of the
Infinitive, 165. his name for it, 166. quoted, 168,
175. his notion of middle Verbs, 176. quoted, 179,
181, 195. explains the power and effect of the Greek
Article, 217 to 222. holds it essential to the Pronoun
not to coalesce with it, 225 to 228. shews the dif-
ferent force of the Article when differently placed in
the same Sentence, 231. quoted, 238, 239. his idea
of the Preposition,
INDEX.

Apuleius, short account of him, — 415
Aquinas, Thomas, quoted, — 440
Argument a priori & a posteriori, 9, 10. which of the two more natural to Man, — — ibid.
Aristophanes, — — 420
Aristotle, his notion of Truth, 3. quoted, 8. his notion of the difference between things absolutely prior, and relatively prior, 9, 10. quoted, 15. his Definition of a Sentence, 19. of a Word, 20. of Substance, 29. divides things into Substance and Accident, 30. how many Parts of Speech he admitted, and why, 32, 33, 34, &c. his notion of Genders, 42. his account of the metaphorical use of Sex, 48. quoted, 55, 56, 89. his Definition of a Verb, 96. his notion of a Now or Instant, 102. of Sensation limited to it, 104, 105, 431. of Time, 106, 107. of Time's dependence on the Soul, 112. quoted, 119, 193. his notion of Substance, 202. calls Euripides ἔγγον, 223. himself called the Stagirite, why, ibid. a distinction of his, 224. his definition of a Conjunction, 239: a passage in his Rhetoric explained, 240. his account of Relatives, 286. his notion of the divine Nature, 301. whom he thought it was probable the Gods should love, 302. his notion of Intellectual and intelligible Objects, ibid. held Words founded in Compact, 314, 315. quoted, 310, 320. his account of the Elements or Letters, 324. his high notion of Principles, 325. quoted, 357, 379, 434. his notion of the difference between moveable and immovable Existence, 360. between intellectual or divine Pleasure, and that which is subordinate, ibid. quoted, 361. his notion of the divine Life or Existence, compared with that of Man, 362. of the difference between
INDEX.

tween the Greeks and the Barbarians, 409. his character as a Writer, compared with Plato and Xenophon, 421. corresponds with Alexander, 419 Arithmetic, founded upon what Principles, 352. (See Geometry.) its subject, what, 367. owes its being to the Mind, how, ibid. Art, what, and Artist, who, 111, 352.

ARTICLES, 31. their near alliance with Pronouns, 73. of two kinds, 214. the first kind, 214 to 232. the second kind, 233 to 236. English Articles, their difference and use, 215. Greek Article, 219. Articles denote pre-acquaintance, 218, 220. thence eminence and notoriety, 222 to 224. with what words they associate, with what not, 224 to 229. Greek Article marks the Subject in Propositions, 230. Articles, instances of their effect, 231, 232. Articles pronominal, 72, 73, 233. instances of their effect, 235, 236, 347. Subjunctive Article, see Pronoun relative or subjunctive.

Articulation, see Voice.

ASCONIUS, 132

ATTRIBUTIVES, 30, 31. defined, 87. of the first order, 87 to 191. of the second order, 192 to 211. See Verb, Participle, Adjective, Adverb.

AULUS GELLIUS, short account of him as a Writer, 414

B

BACON, his notion of Universal Grammar, 2. of ancient Languages and Geniuses, compared to modern, 283. of mental Separation or Division, 366. of Symbols, to convey our thoughts, 334. of the Analogy be-
INDEX.

between the Geniuses of Nations and their Languages, — — 407
Being, or Existence, mutable, immutable, 90, 371.
temporary, superior to Time, 91, 92. See Truth, God.
Belisarius, — — 150
Blemmides, Nicephorus, his notion of Time present, 119. his Etymology of ‘*ETrTItA, 368. his
triple order of Forms or Ideas, — 386
Body, Instrument of the Mind, 305. chief Object of modern Philosophy, 308. confounded with Matter,
309. human, the Mind’s veil, 333. Body, that, or Mind, which has precedence in different Systems,
392, 393
Boerhaave, — — 321
Boethius, how many Parts of Speech he admitted as necessary to Logic, 33. his idea of God’s Existence,
92. illustrates from Virgil the Species of Modes or Sentences, 146. quoted, 312. held Language founded
in Compact, 315. refers to the Deity’s unalterable Nature, 361. his notion of original, intelligible Ideas, 397.
of the difference between Time (however immense) and Eternity, 389. short account of
his Writings, and character, — 416
Both, differs from Two, how, — 227
Brutus, — — — — 413, 419

C.

Caesar, C. Julius, his Laconic Epistle, 178
Caesar, Octavius, influence of his Government upon the Roman Genius, — 419, 420
Callimachus, — — — 52

Cases,
INDEX

Cases, scarce any such thing in modern Languages; 273. name of, whence, 277. Nominative, 279 to 282. Accusative, 282, 283. Genitive and Dative, 284 to 287. Vocative, why omitted, 276. Ablative, peculiar to the Romans, and how they employed it, 276, 277

Causes, Conjunctions connect the four Species of, with their effects, 248. final Cause, first in Speculation, but last in Event, ibid. has its peculiar Mode, 142. peculiar Conjunction, 248. peculiar Case, 287

Chalcidius, 301. short account of him, 415

Chance, subsequent to Mind or Reason, 434, 435

Charisius, Sosipater, 205, 210

Cicero, 132, 176, 269, 272, 311, 313, 407. compelled to allow the unfitness of the Latin Tongue for Philosophy, 411. one of the first that introduced it into the Latin Language, 412. Ciceronian and So- cratic Periods, 418

City, Feminine, why, 48

Clark, Dr. Sam. 128

Comparison, degrees of, 197 to 199. why Verbs admit it not, 200. why incompatible with certain Attributives, ibid. why with all Substantives, 201


Connective, 30, 31. its two kinds, 237. its first kind, ibid to 260. its second, 261 to 274. See Conjunction, Preposition, Con-
INDEX.

CONSENTIUS, his notion of the Neuter Gender, 43.
of middle Verbs, 177. of the positive Degree, 198
Consonant, what, and why so called, 323
Contraries, pass into each other, 132. destructive of
each other, 251
Conversation, what, 398
Conversion, of Attributives into Substantives, 38. of
Substantives into Attributives, 182, 189. of Attri-
butives into one another, 187. of Interrogatives into
Relatives, and vice versa, 206, 207. of Connectives
into Attributives, 205, 272
Corn: Nepos, 212
Country, Feminine, why. 48

D.

DAMASCUS, his notion of Deity, 441
Death, Masculine, why, 51. Brother to sleep, 52
Declension, the name, whence, 278
Definitive, 30, 31, 214. See Articles.
Definitions, what, 367
Δείκτις, 64, 76
DEMOSTHENES, 49, 419, 421
Derivatives, more rationally formed than Primitives,
why, 336
Design, necessarily implies Mind, 379, 434
DIODORUS, the Cynic, 419
DIODORUS LAERTIUS, 34, 145, 154, 317, 322, 324,
347
DIONYSIUS of Halicarnassus, 34, 35
Diversity, its importance to Nature, 250. heightens by
degrees, and how, ibid. to 252
DONATUS, 74, 272

G g

E.
**INDEX.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>E.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Earth,</strong> Feminine, why,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>ECCLESIASTICUS,</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Element,</strong> defined, 324. primary Articulations or Letters so called, why, <em>ibid.</em> their extensive application,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Empiric,</strong> who,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Enclitics,</strong> among the Pronouns, their character, 84, 85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>English Tongue,</strong> its rule as to Genders, 43. a peculiar privilege of, 58. expresses the power of contraddistinctive and enclitic Pronouns, 85. its poverty as to the expression of Modes and Tenses, 148. its analogy in the formation of Participles, 185, 186. neglected by illiterate Writers, <em>ibid.</em> force and power of its Articles, 215 to 233. shews the Predicate of the Proposition by position, as also the Accusative Case of the Sentence, 26, 274, 276. its character, as a Language,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Epictetus,</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Ethnion,</strong> its Etymology,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Ether,</strong> Masculine, why,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Euclid,</strong> a difference between him and <em>Virgil,</em> 69. his Theorems founded upon what,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Euripides,</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Existence,</strong> differs from <em>Essence</em> how,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Experience,</strong> founded on what,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Experiment,</strong> its utility, 352. conducive to Art, how, <em>ibid.</em> beholden to Science, tho' Science not to that,</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>F.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Form and Matter,</strong> 2, 7, elementary Principles, 307.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INDEX.

312. Form, its original meaning, what, 310. transferred from lower things to the highest, 321. pre-existent, where, 312. described by Cicero, 311, 313, in Speech, what, 315, 326, 327, &c. Form of Forms, 312. triple order of Forms in Art, 374. in Nature, 377. intelligible or specific Forms, their peculiar character, 364, 365, 372, 380, 396, 436, 438

Sunday, Feminine, why, — — 57
Fuller, — — 183

G.

Gaza, Theodore, his Definition of a Word, 21. explains the Persons in Pronouns, 67. hardly admits the Subjunctive for an Article, 78. his account of the Tenses, 129. of Modes, 140. quoted, 151. calls the Infinitive the Verb’s Noun, 165. quoted, 181. his Definition of an Adverb, 195. arranges Adverbs by classes according to the Order of the Predicaments, 210. explains the power of the Article, 218. quoted, 225. explains the different powers of conjunctive Particles, 245. of disjunctive, 249. his singular explanation of a Verse in Homer, 253. quoted, — — 262, 271

Gemistus, Georgius, otherwise Pletho, his doctrine of Ideas or intelligible Forms, — 395

Gender, their origin, 41. their natural number, 42. (See Sex.) why wanting to the first and second Pronoun, — — 69

Genus and Species, why they (but not Individuals) admit of Number, — — 39

Geometry, founded on what Principles, 352. that and Arithmetic independent on Experiment, ibid. (See G g 2 Science.)
I N D E X.

Science.) its Subject, what, 367. beholden for it to the Mind, how, — ibid.

God, expressed by Neuters such as τὸ Ἴτινν, Ὅμος, &c. why, 54, 55. as Masculine, why, ibid. immutable, and superior to Time and its Distinctions, 92. allwise, and always wise, 301. immediate objects of his Wisdom, what, ibid. whom among men he may be supposed to love, 302. Form of Forms, sovereign Artist, 312, 313, 437. above all Intensions and Remissions, 162, 359, 439. his Existence different from that of Man, how, 360, 362. his divine Attributes, 361. his Existence necessarily infers that of Ideas or exemplary Forms, 379, 380, 436. exquisite Perfection of these divine Ideas or Forms, 380, 437. his stupendous view of all at once, 389, 390, 442. region of Truth, 162, 391, 403, 405. in Him Knowledge and Power unite, — 440

Good, above all utility, and totally distinct from it, 297. fought by all men, 296, 298. considered by all as valuable for itself, ibid. intellectual, its character, 299. See Science, God.

GORGIAS, — — — 52

Grammar, philosophical or universal, 2. how essential to other Arts, 6. how distinguished from other Grammars, — — — 11

Grammarians, error of, in naming Verbs Neuter, 177. in degrees of Comparison, 198. in the Syntax of Conjunctions, — — 238

Greeks, their character, as a Nation, 415, &c. Asiatic Greeks, different from the other Greeks, and why, 410. Grecian Genius, its maturity and decay, 417, &c.

GREEK
INDEX.

GREEK TONGUE, how perfect in the expression of Modes and Tenses, 147. force of its imperatives in the past tenses, 156. wrong in ranging Interjections with Adverbs, 289. its character, as a Language, 418, 423

GROCIUS, his System of the Tenses, — 128

H.

HERACLITUS, Saying of, 8. his System of things, what, — — 369, 370

HERMES, his Figure, Attributes, and Character, 324, 325, 326. Authors, who have writ of him, 326

HESIOD, called ὁ ὄμηρος, the Poet, by Plato, 223

HOADLY'S Accidence, — — 128

HOMER, 50, 52, 82, 84, 145, 149, 221, 223, 235, 253, 273, 285, 308, 417, 421

HORACE, 57, 80, 125, 142, 163, 169, 178, 199, 207, 232, 260, 413, 424, 425

I.

Ideas, of what, Words the Symbols, 341 to 347. if only particular were to exist, the consequence what, 337 to 339. general, their importance, 341, 342. undervalued by whom, and why, 350. of what faculty the Objects, 360. their character, 362 to 366, 390. the only objects of Science and real Knowledge, why, 368. acquired, how, 353 to 374. derived whence, 374, &c. their triple Order in Art, 376. the same in Nature, 381. essential to Mind, why, 379, 380. the first and highest Ideas, character of, 380, 440. Ideas, their different Sources, stated, 400. their real source, 434, 438

G g 3
INDEX.

JEREMIAH, — — 405

Imagination, what, 354. differs from Sense, how, 355.

from Memory and Recollection, how, ibid.

Individuals, why so called, 39, 40. quit their character how and why, 40, 41. their infinity, how expressed by a finite number of Words, 214 to 217, 234, 346. become objects of Knowledge, how, 369

INSTANT, See Now.

Intellect, See Mind.

Interjections, their application and effect, 289.

no distinct Part of Speech with the Greeks, though with the Latins, 289. their character and description, — — 290

Interrogation, its species explained and illustrated, 151 to 154. Interrogatives refuse the Article, why, 228

Joannes Grammat. See Philoponus.

Isocrates, — — 421

Julian. — — 416

K.

Kuster, — — 176

Knowledge, if any more excellent than Sensation, the consequence, — — 371, 372

L.

Language, how constituted, 327. defined, 329. founded in compact, 314, 327. (See Speech.) symbolic, not imitative, why, 332 to 355. impossible for it to express the real Effences of things, 335. its double capacity why necessary, 348. its Matter, what, 349. its Form, what, ibid. its Precision and Permanence derived whence, 345. particular Languages,
INDEX.

Languages, their Identity, whence, 374. their Diversity, whence, *ibid.* See English, Greek, Latin, Oriental.

Latin Tongue, deficient in Aorists, and how it supplies the defect, 125. its peculiar use of the Preteritum Perfectum, 131. has recourse to Auxiliars, for some Modes and Tenses, 148. to a Periphrasis for some Participles, 185. in what sense it has Articles, 233. the Ablative, a Case peculiar to it, 276. right in separating Interjections from the other Parts of Speech, 289, 290. its character, as a Language, 411. not made for Philosophy, *ibid.* 412. funk with Boethius, 416

Letters, what Socrates thought of their inventor, 325. divine honours paid him by the Egyptians, *ibid.* See Element.

Liberty, its influence upon Mens Genius, 420

Life, connected with Being, — 300, 301, 432

Linnaeus, — — 44

Literature, its cause and that of Virtue, connected, how, 407. antient, recommended to the Study of the liberal, 424. its peculiar effect with regard to a man's character, — — 425, 426

Logic, what, — — 3, 4

Longinus, noble remark of, — 420

Lucian, — — 41

Lucilius, — — *ibid.*

L.

Macrobium. short account of him, 414. quoted 127, 157, 168

Gg 4

Man,
INDEX.

Man, rational and social, 1, 2. his peculiar ornament, what, 2. first or prior to Man, what, 9, 269. his Existence, the manner of, what, 359. how most likely to advance in happiness, 362. has within him something divine, 302. his Ideas, whence derived, 393 to 401. Medium, thro' which he derives them, what, 359, 393. his errors, whence, 406. to be corrected, how, ibid.


Marcianus Capella, short account of him, 415.

Master Artifl, what forms his character, 111.

Matter joined with Form, 2, 7. its original meaning, confounded by the Vulgar, how, 309. its extensive character according to antient Philosophy, 308. described by Cicero, 313. of Language, what, 315. described at large, 316, &c.

Maximus Tyrius, his notion of the Supreme Intellect, 162.

Memory and Recollection, what, 355. distinguished from Imagination or Phantasy, how, ibid.

Metaphor, its use, 269.

Metaphysicians modern, their Systems, what, 392.


Mind (not Sense) recognizes time, 107 to 112. universal, 162, 311, 312, 359. differs not (as Sense does) from the objects of its perception, 301. acts in part through the body, in part without it, 305. its high power of separation, 306, 366. penetrates into all things, 307. Nous 'Theos,' what, 310. Mind differs from Sense, how, 364, 365. the source of
INDEX.

of Union by viewing One in Many, 362 to 365. of Distinction by viewing Many in One, 366. without Ideas, resembles what, 380. region of Truth and Science. 371, 372. that or Body, which has precedence, 392, &c. Mind human how spontaneous and easy in its Energies, 361, 362. all Minds similar and congenial, why, 395

Modes or Moods, whence derived, and to what end destined, 140. Declarative or Indicative, 141. Potential, 142. Subjunctive, 143. Interrogative, *ibid.* Inquisitive, *ibid.* Imperative, 144. Precautive or Optimative, *ibid.* the several Species illustrated from Homer, Virgil, and Milton, 145 to 147. Infinitive Mode, its peculiar character, 162, 163. how dignified by the Stoics, 164. other Modes resolvable into it, 166. its application and coalescence, 167. Mode of Science, of Conjecture, of Proficiency, of Legislation, 168 to 170. Modes compared and distinguished, 149 to 160. Greek Imperatives of the Past explained, and illustrated, 156, 157

Moon, Feminine, why, 45

Motion, and even its Privation necessarily imply Time, 95

Muretus, quoted, 441, 442. his notion of the Romans, *ibid.*

Musonius Rufus, 416

N.

Names, proper, what the consequence if no other words, 337 to 339. their use, 345. hardly parts of Language, 346, 373

Nathan and David, 232

Na-
INDEX.

Nature, first to Nature, first to Man, how they differ, 9, 10. frugality of, 320. Natures subordinate subservient to the higher, 359

Nicethorus, See Blemmides.

Nicomachus, 437

Noun, or Substantive, its three Sorts, 37. what Nouns susceptible of Number, and why, 39. only Part of Speech susceptible of Gender, 41, 171.

A Now or Instant, the bound of Time, but no part of it, 101, 102. analogous to a Point in a geometrical Line, ibid. its use with respect to Time, 104. its minute and transient presence illustrated, 117. by this Presence Time made present, 116, 117, 118. See Time, Place, Space.

Number, to what words it appertains, and why, 39, 40.

O.

Objectors, ludicrous, 293. grave, 294

Ocean, Masculine, why, 49

Olympiodorus, quoted from a Manuscript, his notion of Knowledge, and its degrees, 371, 372. of general Ideas, the objects of Science, 394, 395

One, by natural co-inciidence, 162, 173, 192, 241, 262 to 265. by the help of external connectives, 241, 265

Oriental Languages, number of their Parts of Speech, 35. their character and Genius, 409

Orpheus, 441

Ovid, 132, 141, 206

P.
INDEX.

P.

Participle, how different from the Verb, 94, 184. its essence or character, 184. how different from the Adjective, 186. See Attributive, Latin and English Tongues.

Particulars, how though infinite, expressed by Words which are finite, 346. consequence of attaching ourselves wholly to them, 351

Pausanias, 285

Perception and Volition, the Soul's leading Powers, 15, 17. Perception two-fold, 348. In Man what first, 9, 10, 353, 359. sensitive and intellectual differ, how, 364, 365. if not correspondent to its objects, erroneous, 371

Period. See Sentence.

Peripatetic Philosophy, in the latter ages commonly united with the Platonic, 160. what species of Sentences it admitted, 144. its notion of Cases, 277. held words founded in Compact, 314

Perizonius, his rational account of the Persons in Nouns and Pronouns, 171

Persius, 76, 163, 372. short account of his character, 413

Persons, first, second, third, their Origin and Use, 65 to 67

Phanasy, See Imagination.

Philoponus, his notion of Time, 431. of the business of Wisdom or Philosophy, 433. of God, the Sovereign Artist, 437

Philosophy, what would banish it out of the World, 293, 294. its proper business, what, 433. antient differs
INDEX.

differs from modern, how, 308. modern, its chief object, what, — ibid.

Philosophers, ancient, who not qualified to write or talk about them, 270. provided words for new Ideas, how, — 269

Philosophers, modern, their notion of Ideas, 350. their employment, 351. their Criterion of Truth, ibid. deduce all from Body, 392. supply the place of occult Qualities, how. — 393

Place, mediate and immediate, 118. applied to illustrate the present Time, and the present Instant, ibid. its various relations denoted, how, 266, 271. its Latitude and Universality, — 266

Plato, 21. how many Parts of Speech he admitted, 32. his account of Genius and Species, 39. quoted, 92. his Style abounds with Particles, why, 259. new-coined Word of, 269. quoted, 325. in what he placed real happiness, 362. his two different, and opposite Etymologies of 'Επικρατεσ, 369, 370. his Idea of Time, 389. quoted, 407. his character, as a Writer, compared with Zenophon and Aristotle, 422

Pletho, See Gemistus.

Pliny, his account how the antient artists inscribed their names upon their Works, — 136

Plutarch, — 33

Poetry, what, — 5, 6

Porphyry, — 39

Position, its force in Syntax, 26, 274, 276, 230

Prepositions, 32. defined, 261. their use, 265. their original Signification, 266. their subsequent and figurative, 268. their different application, 270, 271. force in Composition, 271, 272. change into Adverbs, — — 272, 205

Prin-
INDEX.

Principles, to be estimated from their consequences, 7, 232, 236, 325. of Union and Diversity, their different ends and equal importance to the Universe, 250. (See One, Union, Diversity) elementary Principles mysteriously blended, 307. their invention difficult, why, 325. those of Arithmetic and Geometry how simple, — 352

Priscian, defines a Word, 20. explains from Philosophy the Noun and Verb, 28, 33. quoted, 34. explains how Indication and Relation differ, 63. the nature of the Pronoun, 65. of pronominal Persons, 67. his reason why the two first Pronouns have no Genders, 70. why but one Pronoun of each sort, 71. ranges Articles with Pronouns according to the Stoics, 74. a pertinent observation of his, 88. explains the double Power of the Latin Präteritum, 125, 131. his doctrine concerning the Tenses, 130. defines Moods or Modes, 141. his notion of the Imperative, 155. of the Infinitive, 165, 166. of Verbs which naturally precede the Infinitive, 168. of Impersonals, 175. of Verbs Neuter, 177. of the Participle, 194. of the Adverb, 195. of Comparatives, 202. quoted, 210. his reason why certain Pronouns coalesce not with the Article, 225, 226. explains the different powers of Connectives which conjoin, 243; 244, 245. of Connectives which disjoin, 250. quoted, 262. his notion of the Interjection, 291. of Sound or Voice, — 316

Proclus, his Opinion about Rest, 95, 431. quoted, 310. explains the Source of the Doctrine of Ideas, 434, 435, 436, 438

Pronouns, why so called, 65. their Species, or Persons, 65, 66. why the first and second have no Sex, 69,
INDEX.

69, 70. resemble Articles, but how distinguished, 73. their coalescence, 74, 75. their importance in Language, 77. relative or subjunctive Pronoun, its nature and use, 78 to 83. those of the first and second person when expressed, when not, 83. ἀνθηκὼν and ἐπιθοτομένης, how distinguished, 84. Primitives, refuse the Article, why, 225 Protagoras, his notion of Genders, 42. a Sophism of his, _______ _______ 144 Proverbs of Solomon, _______ _______ 405 Publius Syrus, _______ _______ 124

Q.

Quintilian, _______ _______ 154, 233, 407 Qualities occult, what in modern Philosophy supplies their place, _______ _______ 393

R.

Relatives, mutually infer each other, 251, 286. their usual Case, the Genitive, _______ ibid. Rhetoric, what, _______ _______ 5, 6 Romans, their character as a Nation, 411. Roman Genius, its maturity and decay, _______ 418, &c.

S.

Sallustius Philosoph. _______ _______ 401 Sanctius, his elegant account of the different Arts respecting Speech, 5. quoted, 36, 163, 171. rejects Impersonals, 175. quoted, 202. his notion of the Conjunction, after Scaliger, 238. of the Interjection, _______ _______ _______ 291 Scal-
INDEX.

Scaliger, his Etymology of *Quis*, 82. his notion of Tenses from Grocinus, 128. his elegant observation upon the order of the Tenses, 138. upon the pre-eminence of the Indicative Mode, 169. his account how the Latins supply the place of Articles, 233. his notion of the Conjunction, 238. his subtle explication of its various powers, 242 to 247, 258. his reason from Philosophy why Substantives do not coalesce, 264. his origin of Prepositions, 266. his Etymology of *Scientia*, 370

Science, 5. its Mode the Indicative, and Tense the Present, why, 159. its Conjunction the Collective, why, 246. defended, 295. valuable for its consequences, *ibid.* for itself, 296 to 303. (See Gon) pure and speculative depends on Principles the most simple, 352. not beholden to Experiment, though Experiment to it, 353. whole of it seen in Composition and Division, 367. its Etymology, 369. residence of itself and its objects, where, 372. See Mind.

Scriptures, their Sublimity, whence, — 410

Seneca, — — 47, 139, 414

Sensation, of the Present only, 105, 107, 139. none of Time, 105. each confined to its own Objects, 333, 369. its Objects infinite, 338, 353. Man's first Perception, *ibid.* consequence of attaching ourselves wholly to its objects, 351. how prior to Intellecction, 379. how subsequent, — 391

Sentence, definition of, 19, 20. its various Species investigated, 14, 15. illustrated from *Milion*, 147, &c. connection between Sentences and Modes, 144

Separation, corporeal inferior to mental, why, 306

Servius, — — 132, 227, 432

Sex,
INDEX.

Sex, (See Gender.) transferred in Language to Beings; that in Nature want it, and why, 44, 45. Substances alone susceptible of it, 171
Shakespeare, 12, 13, 23, 41, 47, 51, 53
Ship, Feminine, why, 48
Simplicius, his triple Order of Ideas or Forms, 381, 382
Sophocles, 432
Soul, its leading Powers, 15, &c.
Sound, species of, 314, 317. the "Twm, or Matter of Language, 315. defined, 316. See Voice.
Space, how like, how unlike to Time, 100. See Place.
Speech, peculiar Ornament of Man, 1, 2. how resolved or analyzed, 2. its four principal Parts, and why these, and not others, 28 to 31. its Matter and Form taken together, 307 to 315. its Matter taken separately, 316 to 326. its Form taken separately, 327 to 359. necessity of Speech, whence, 332, 333. founded in Compact, 314, 327
Spencer, 134, 164
Spirits animal, subtle Ether, nervous Ducts, Vibrations, &c. their use in modern Philosophy. See Qualities occult.
Stoics, how many Parts of Speech they held, 34. ranged Articles along with Pronouns, 74. their account of the Tenses, 130. multiplied the number of Sentences, 144. allowed the name of Verb to the infinitive only, into which they supposed all other Modes resolvable, 164 to 166. their logical view of Verbs, and their Distinctions subsequent, 179 to 181. their notion of the Participle, 194. of the Adverb, 195. called the Adverb τῶν ἄλλων, and why, 216.
INDEX.

210. called the Preposition σύνδεσμος τροπήνως, 261. invented new Words, and gave new Significations to old ones, 269. their notion of Causes, 278. of the "Τλή or Matter of Virtue, 309, 310. of Sound, 316. of the Species of Sound, 322. their Definition of an Element, 324. Subject and Predicate, how distinguished in Greek, 230. how in English, ibid. analogous to what in nature, 279.

Substance and Attribute, 29. the great Objects of natural Union, 264. Substance susceptible of Sex, 171, 41. of Number, 40. co-incides, not with Substance, 264. incapable of Intension, and therefore of Comparison, 201, 202.

Substantive, 30, 31. described, 37. primary, ibid. to 62. secondary, 63 to 67. (See Noun, Pronoun.) Substantive and Attributive, analogous in Nature to what, 279.

Σύμεχμα, Παρασύμεχμα, &c. 180.

Sun, Masculine, why, 45.

Sylva, a peculiar Signification of, 308, 309.

Symbol, what, 330. differs from Imitation, how, ibid. preferred to it in constituting Language, why, 332.

T.

Tenses, their natural Number, and why, 119, 120. Aorists, 123. Tenses either passing or complete, what authorities for these Distinctions, 128 to 130. Präteritum perfectum of the Latin, peculiar uses of, 131 to 134. Imperfectum, peculiar uses of, 135 to 137. order of Tenses in common Grammars not fortuitous, 138.

Terence.
INDEX.

Terence, — — 205, 206, 272
The and A. See Article.
Themistius, 9. his notion how the Mind gains the idea of Time, 108. of the dependance of Time on the Soul's existence, 112. of the latent transition of Nature from one Genus to another, 259, 432
Theodectes, — 35
Theophrastus, his notion of Speech under its various Relations, 4. mentioned, — 419
Theuth, inventor of Letters, 324. See Hermes.
Tibullus, — 76, 132, 133
Time, Masculine, why, 50. why implied in every Verb, 95, 96. gave rise to Tenses, ibid. its most obvious division, 97. how like, how unlike to Space, 100 to 103. strictly speaking no Time present, 105. in what sense it may be called present, 116, 117, 432. all Time divisible and extended, 118, 100, 101. no object of Sensation, why, 105. how faint and shadowy in existence, 106, 431. how, and by what power we gain its idea, 107. Idea of the past, prior to that of the future, 109. that of the future, how acquired, 109, 110. how connected with Art and Prudence, 111. of what faculty, Time the proper Object, 112. how intimately connected with the Soul, ibid. order and value of its several Species, 113. what things exist in it, what not, 160 to 162. its natural effect on things existing in it, 161, 50. described by Plato, as the moving Picture of permanent Eternity, 389. this account explained by Boethius, ibid. See Now or Instant.
Truth, necessary, immutable, superior to all distinctions of present, past, and future, 90, 91, 92, 159, 160, 404, 405. (See Being, God) its place or region, 162,
INDEX.

162, 372. seen in Composition and Division, 3, 367. even negative, in some degree synthetical, 3, 250, 364. every Truth One, and so recognized, how, 364, 365. factitious Truth, — 403

V.

VARRO, — — 56, 61, 74, 413

VERB, 31. its more loose, as well as more strict acceptations, 87, 193. Verb strictly so called, its character, 93, 94. distinguished from Participles, 94. from Adjectives, *ibid* implies Time, why, 95. Tenses, 98, 119. Modes or Moods, 140, 170. Verbs, how susceptible of Number and Person, 170. Species of Verbs, 173. active, 174. passive, *ibid*. middle, 175, 176. transitive, 177. neuter, *ibid*. inceptive, 126, 182. desiderative or meditative, 127. formed out of Substantives, 182, 183. (See Time, Tenses, Modes.) Imperfects rejected, 175

Verbs Substantives, their pre-eminence, 88. essential to every Proposition, *ibid*. implied in every other Verb, 90, 93. denote existence, 88. vary, as varies the existence or Being, which they denote, 91, 92. See Being, Truth, God.

Verbs, logical, — — 340

Vice, Feminine, why, — — 56

VIRGIL, 46, 47, 48, 49, 57, 68, 83, 132. his peculiar method of coupling the passing and complective Tenses, 133 to 136. quoted, 141, 182, 198, 199, 206, 235, 286, 287, 389, 401, 432. his idea of the Roman Genius, — 235, 412

Virtue, Feminine, why, 55. moral and intellectual differ, how, 299, 300. its Matter, what, 309, 310. Its H 2 its
INDEX.

its Form, what, 311. connected with Literature, how, — — — 407
Understanding, its Etymology, 369. human Understanding, a composite of what, — 425
Union, natural, the great objects of, 264, 279. perceived by what power, 363. in every truth, whence derived, — — — 365
Universe. See World.
Voice, defined, 318. simple, produced how, 318, 319. differs from articulate, how, ibid. articulate, what, 319 to 324. articulate, species of, 321 to 323. See Vowel, Consonant, Element.
Volition. See Perception.
Vossius, — — 35, 75, 290
Vowel, what, and why so called, — 321, 322
Utility, always and only fought by the fordid and illiberal, 294, 295, 298. yet could have no Being, were there not something beyond it, 297. See Good.

W.

Whole and Parts, — — — 7
Wisdom, how some Philosophers thought it distinguished from Wit, — — 368, 433
Words, defined, 20, 21, 328. the several Species of, 23 to 31. significant by themselves, significant by Relation, 27. variable, invariable, 24. significant by themselves and alone, 37 to 211. by Relation and associated, 213 to 274. significant by Compact, 314, 327. Symbols, and not Imitations, 332. Symbols, of what not, 337 to 341. Symbols, of what, 341 to 349, 372. how, though in Number finite, able to express infinite Particulars, 346, 372, 373 World,
INDEX.

World, visible and external, the passing Picture of what, 383, 437. preserved one and the same, though ever changing, how, 384, 385. its Cause not void of Reason, — — — 436

Writers, antient polite differ from modern polite, in what and why, — — 259, 260

X.

XENOPHON, 56, 407. his character as a Writer, compared with Plato and Aristotle, — 422, 423

Y.

"Yan, 308. See Matter, Sylvia.

FINIS.

ERRATA.

ADVERTISEMENT.

The Reader is desired to take notice, that as often as the author quotes V. I. p. &c. he refers to Three Treatises published first in one Volume, Octavo, in the year 1745.